Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.
# Table of Contents

**unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

James
- Introduction to James .......................... 9
- James 1 ........................................ 10
- James 2 ........................................ 12
- James 3 ........................................ 43
- James 4 ........................................ 73
- James 5 ........................................ 93

**unfoldingWord® Translation Academy** ........................................... 137

- Abstract Nouns .................................. 138
- Active or Passive ................................ 140
- Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information ........................................ 143
- Double Negatives ................................ 146
- Doublet .......................................... 148
- Ellipsis .......................................... 150
- Exclamations ................................... 152
- Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ ..................... 154
- Forms of You ...................................... 156
- Generic Noun Phrases ............................. 157
- How to Translate Names ......................... 159
- Hyperbole ........................................ 163
- Hypothetical Situations .......................... 167
- Idiom .............................................. 170
- Inclusive and Exclusive “We” .................... 172
- Metaphor .......................................... 174
- Metonymy ........................................ 180
- Nominal Adjectives ................................ 182
- Numbers .......................................... 184
- Parallelism ........................................ 187
- Personification .................................... 190
- Predictive Past ................................... 192
- Rhetorical Question ............................... 194
- Simile ............................................. 197
- Synecdoche ........................................ 200
- Textual Variants .................................. 202
- Translate Unknowns ............................... 204
- When Masculine Words Include Women ........ 207

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words** ............................................... 209

- Abraham, Abram .................................. 210
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress ........ 211
- adversary, enemy .................................. 212
- altar ............................................... 213
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather .................. 214
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word(s)</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anoint, anointed, anointing</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appoint, appointed</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrogant, arrogance</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beast</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beloved</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bless, blessed, blessing</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boast, boastful</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call, call out</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ, Messiah</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church, Church</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean, wash</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commit, committed, commitment</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compassion, compassionate</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condemn, condemned, condemnation</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confess, confession</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create, created, creation, creator</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crown, crowned</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cry, cry out, outcry</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curse, cursed, cursing</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defile, defiled</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die, dead, deadly, death</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earth, earthen, earthly</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elder, older, old</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elijah</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endure, endurance</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envy, covet</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evil, wicked, unpleasant</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exalt, exalted, exaltation</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face, facial</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faith</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favor, favorable, favoritism</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word/Phrase</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firstfruits</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flesh</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fool, foolish, folly</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>footstool</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fountain, source, spring</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit, fruitful, unfruitful</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulfill, fulfilled, carried out</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gift</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glory, glorious, glorify</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God the Father, heavenly Father, Father</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gold, golden</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grace, gracious</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guilt, guilty</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harvest, reap</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heir</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hell, lake of fire</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse, warhorse, horseback</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humble, humbled, humility</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iniquity</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaac</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James (brother of Jesus)</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jealous, jealousy</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge, judgment</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind [NOT kindness]</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor, laborer, work, hard work</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last day, latter days</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law, principle</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life, live, living, alive</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

lord, Lord, master, sir

love, beloved

lowly, lowliness

lust, lustful, passions, desires

member, body parts

mercy, merciful

messenger

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

month, monthly

mourn, mourner, weeping

name

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

obey, obedient

oil

olive

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

partial, partiality

patient, patience, impatient

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

perish

plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

power, powerful, powerfully

pray, prayer

profit, profitable, unprofitable

promise, promised

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

prostitute, harlot, whored

proud, pride, prideful

pure, purify, purification

Rahab

raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

rebuke

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

reward, prize, deserve,

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...

royal, royalty, king's, queen's

Satan, devil, evil one

save, saved, safe, salvation

send, sent, send out

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

shadow, overshadow, shade
Introduction to James

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of James

1. Greetings (1:1)
2. Testing and maturity (1:2-18)
3. Hearing and doing the Word of God (1:19-27)
4. True faith seen in works
5. Word of God (1:19-27)
6. Royal law of love (2:1-13)
7. Works (2:14-26)
8. Difficulties in community
9. Dangers of the tongue (3:1-12)
10. Wisdom from above (3:13-18)
11. Worldly desires (4:1-12)
12. God's perspective on your decisions
13. Boasting about tomorrow (4:13-17)
14. Warning about riches (5:1-6)
15. Suffering with patience (5:7-11)
16. Closing exhortations
17. Oaths (5:12)
18. Prayer and healing (5:13-18)
19. Care for one another (5:19-20)

Who wrote the Book of James?

The author identifies himself as James. This was probably James, the half-brother of Jesus. James was a leader in the early church and was part of the Jerusalem council. The Apostle Paul also called him a “pillar” of the church.

This is not the same man as the Apostle James. The Apostle James was killed before this letter was written.

What is the Book of James about?

In this letter, James encouraged believers who were suffering. He told them know that God uses their suffering to help them become mature Christians. James also told them of the need for believers to do good deeds. He wrote much in this letter about how believers should live and treat one another. For example, he commanded them to treat one another fairly, to not fight with one another, and to use riches wisely.

James taught his readers by using many examples from nature such as in 1:6, 11 and 3:1-12. Also, many parts of this letter are similar to what Jesus wrote in the Sermon on the Mount (Mat 5-7).

Who were the “twelve tribes in the dispersion”?

James said he was writing to the “twelve tribes in the dispersion” (1:1). Some scholars think that James was writing to Jewish Christians. Other scholars think that James was writing to all Christians in general. This letter is known as one of the “General Epistles” since it was not written to a specific church or individual.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “James.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “A Letter from James” or “The Letter James Wrote.” (See: How to Translate Names)
Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Did James disagree with Paul about how a person is justified before God?

Paul taught in Romans that Christians are justified by faith and not by works. James seems to teach that Christians are justified by works. This can be confusing. But a better understanding of what Paul and James taught shows that they agree with one another. Both of them taught that a person needs faith in order to be justified. And they both taught that true faith will cause a person to do good works. Paul and James taught about these things in different ways because they had different audiences who needed to know different things about being justified. (See: just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification and faith and work, works, deeds)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How should the translator signal transitions between topics in the Book of James?

The letter quickly changes topics. Sometimes James does not tell the readers that he is about to change topics. It is acceptable to allow the verses to appear disconnected from each other. It may make sense to set the passages apart by starting a new line or putting a space between topics.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of James?

- “Do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is useless?” (2:20). The ULT, UST, and modern versions read this way. Some older versions read, “Do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is dead?” If a translation of the Bible exists in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions. If not, translators are advised to follow the modern reading.

(See: Textual Variants)
James 1

James 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

James formally introduces this letter in verse 1. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

Special concepts in this chapter

Testing and temptation

These two words occur together in (James 1:12-13). Both words speak of a person who is able to choose between doing something good and doing something evil. The difference between them is important. God is testing the person and wants him to do what is good. Satan is tempting the person and wants him to do what is evil.

Crowns

The crown that a man who passes the test receives is a reward, something that people who do something especially good receive. (See: reward, prize, deserve.)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

James uses many metaphors in this chapter, and you will need to understand the material on the metaphor page before you can translate them well. (See: Metaphor)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“To the twelve tribes in the dispersion”

It is not clear to whom James wrote this letter. He calls himself a servant of the Lord Jesus Christ, so he was probably writing to Christians. But he calls his readers “the twelve tribes in the dispersion,” words which usually refer to Jews. It is possible that he is using the words as a metaphor for “all people whom God has chosen” or that he wrote the letter at a time when most Christians had grown up as Jews.
James 1:1

General Information:

The apostle James writes this letter to all the Christians. Many of them were Jews, and they lived in many different places.

James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)
I, James, serve God and am bound to God through the Lord Jesus the Messiah (UST)

The phrase “this letter is from” is implied. Alternate translation: “This letter is from James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to the twelve tribes (ULT)
I am writing this letter to the twelve Jewish tribes (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this is a synecdoche for Jewish Christians, or 2) this is a metaphor for all Christians. Alternate translation: “to God's faithful people” (See: Synecdoche and Metaphor)

in the dispersion (ULT)
who trust in the Messiah and who are scattered throughout the world (UST)

The term “dispersion” normally referred to the Jews who were scattered in other countries, away from their homeland Israel. This abstract noun can be expressed with a phrase with the verb “scattered.” Alternate translation: “who are scattered around the world” or “who live in other countries” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Greetings (ULT)
I greet you all (UST)

a basic greeting, such as “Hello!” or “Good day!”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus Christ
• of the Lord
• of God
• Christ
• James
• dispersion
• twelve tribes
• a servant
• tribes

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus the Messiah
• am bound to God through the Lord
• God
• the Messiah
• I, James
• who trust in the Messiah and who are scattered throughout the world
• twelve Jewish tribes
• serve
• Jewish tribes
James 1:2

Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles (ULT)
My fellow believers, consider it something to greatly rejoice over when you experience various kinds of hardships (UST)

“My fellow believers, think of all your different kinds of troubles as something to celebrate”

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• joy
• troubles

Translation Words - UST

• fellow believers
• something to greatly rejoice over
• of hardships

ULT
2 Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles.

UST
2 My fellow believers, consider it something to greatly rejoice over when you experience various kinds of hardships.
James 1:3

the testing of your faith produces endurance (ULT) as you trust God in hardships, they help you to endure even more hardships (UST)

The expressions “the testing,” “your faith,” and “endurance” are nouns that stand for actions. God does the testing, that is, he finds out how much the believers trust and obey him. Believers (“you”) believe in him and endure suffering. Alternate translation: “when you suffer hardships, God is finding out how much you trust him. As a result, you will become able to endure even more hardships” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• faith
• testing
• endurance
• You know

Translation Words - UST

• as you trust God
• in hardships
• to endure even more hardships
• Understand

ULT
3 You know that the testing of your faith produces endurance.

UST
3 Understand that as you trust God in hardships, they help you to endure even more hardships.
James 1:4

But...endurance...But...let...endurance...complete its work (ULT)
Endure hardships...Endure hardships...to their very end (UST)

Here endurance is spoken of as if it were a person at work. Alternate translation: “Learn to endure any hardship” (See: Personification)

fully developed (ULT)
you may follow the Messiah in every way (UST)

able to trust in Christ and obey him in all circumstances

not lacking anything (ULT)
Then you will not fail to do well (UST)

This can be stated in the positive. Alternate translation: “having all that you need” or “being all that you need to be”

Translation Words - ULT

• its work
• But...endurance
• let...complete
• fully developed

Translation Words - UST

• very end
• Endure hardships
• very end
• you may follow the Messiah in every way
James 1:5

let him ask for it from God, the one who gives (ULT)
let him ask God, who gives generously (UST)

“ask God for it. He is the one who gives”

God, the one who gives generously and without rebuke
to all who ask (ULT)
God, who gives generously and is not angry at anyone
who asks (UST)

“gives generously and does not rebuke any”

he will give it to him (ULT)
is not angry at anyone who asks (UST)

“God will do it” or “God will answer your prayer”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• wisdom
• rebuke

Translation Words - UST

• God, who gives generously
• needs to know what to do
• is not angry at anyone who asks
James 1:6

in faith, doubting nothing (ULT)  
trust him to answer you. Do not doubt that he will answer (UST)

This can be stated in the positive. Alternate translation: “with complete certainty that God will answer” (See: Double Negatives)

For anyone who doubts is like a wave in the sea that is driven by the wind and tossed around (ULT)  
and always help you, because people who keep doubting God cannot follow him, like a wave of the sea that is blown back and forth by the wind and thus cannot continue in the same direction (UST)

Anyone who doubts that God will help him is said to be like the water in the ocean or in a large lake, which keeps moving in different directions. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• faith
• is like

Translation Words - UST

• trust him to answer you
• cannot follow him, like

ULT
6 But let him ask in faith, doubting nothing. For anyone who doubts is like a wave in the sea that is driven by the wind and tossed around.

UST
6 But when you ask God, trust him to answer you. Do not doubt that he will answer and always help you, because people who keep doubting God cannot follow him, like a wave of the sea that is blown back and forth by the wind and thus cannot continue in the same direction.
James 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• he will receive

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord God
• will do anything that they request him to do

ULT

7 For that person must not think that he will receive anything from the Lord.

UST

7 Indeed, people who doubt should not think that the Lord God will do anything that they request him to do.
James 1:8

**is double-minded (ULT)**

**who cannot decide whether they will follow Jesus or not follow Jesus (UST)**

The word “double-minded” refers to a person’s thoughts when he is unable to make a decision. Alternate translation: “cannot decide if he will follow Jesus or not” (See: Metaphor)

**unstable in all his ways (ULT)**

These people do not do what they say they will do (UST)

Here this person is spoken of as if he cannot stay on one path but instead goes from one to another. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

• is double-minded

**Translation Words - UST**

• who cannot decide whether they will follow Jesus or not follow Jesus
James 1:9

the poor brother
“the believer who does not have much money”

let...boast...of his high position (ULT)
should be glad...because God has honored them (UST)

Someone whom God has honored is spoken of as if he were standing in a high place. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- brother
- let...boast
- high position
- poor

Translation Words - UST
- Believers
- should be glad
- because God has honored
- who are poor

ULT
9 But let the poor brother boast of his high position.

UST
9 Believers who are poor should be glad because God has honored them.
James 1:10

but the rich man of his low position (ULT)
And believers who are rich should be glad that God has humbled them, which helps them trust in Jesus the Messiah, because they and their riches (UST)

The words "let boast" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “but let the rich man boast of his low position” (See: Ellipsis)

but the rich man (ULT)
And believers who are rich (UST)

“but the man who has a lot of money.” Possible meanings are 1) the rich man is a believer or 2) the rich man is an unbeliever.

of his low position (ULT)
should be glad that God has humbled them, which helps them trust in Jesus the Messiah, because they and their riches (UST)

A rich believer should be happy if God causes him to suffer. Alternate translation: “should be happy that God has given him difficulties” (See: Ellipsis)

he will pass away as a wild flower in the grass (ULT)
will pass away...just as...wild flowers wither (UST)

Rich people are spoken of as being similar to wild flowers, which are alive for only a short time. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• low position
• as

Translation Words - UST

• should be glad that God has humbled
• just as
James 1:11

**ULT**

11 For the sun rises with burning heat and dries up the grass. Its flower falls off, and its beautiful appearance perishes. In the same way, the rich man will also fade away in the middle of his journey.

**UST**

11 When the sun rises, the scorching hot wind dries the plants and causes the flowers to fall and no longer be beautiful. Like the flower that dies, rich people will die while they are earning money.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- perishes
- appearance

**Translation Words - UST**

- that dies
- no longer be beautiful. Like
James 1:12

Connecting Statement:

James reminds the believers who have fled that God does not cause temptation; he tells them how to avoid temptation.

Blessed is the man who endures testing (ULT)
God honors those who endure hard trials (UST)

“The man who endures testing is fortunate” or “The man who endures testing is well off”

endures testing (ULT)
endure hard trials (UST)

remains faithful to God during hardships

passed the test (ULT)
God will reward them (UST)

he has been approved by God

he will receive the crown of life (ULT)
God will reward them...by making them live forever (UST)

Eternal life is spoken of as if it were a wreath of leaves placed on the head of a victorious athlete. Alternate translation: “receive eternal life as his reward” (See: Metaphor)

has been promised to those who love God (ULT)
as he has promised...to do for all who love him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has promised to those who love him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• of life
• Blessed is
• to those who love
• has been promised
• he will receive
• endures
• testing
• crown

Translation Words - UST

• by making them live forever
• God honors
• to do for all who love
• as he has promised
• God will reward them
• endure
• hard trials
• by making them live forever
James 1:13

when he is tempted (ULT)
When we are tempted to sin (UST)

“when he desires to do something evil”

I am tempted...by...God (ULT)
it is...God who is tempting us (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God is trying to make me do something evil” (See: Active or Passive)

because God...because God...is not tempted by evil (ULT)
because...no one can persuade God to do evil (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one can make God desire to do evil” (See: Active or Passive)

nor does he himself tempt anyone (ULT)
and he never tries to persuade anyone to do evil (UST)

“and God himself does not try to persuade anyone do evil”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• because God
• when he is tempted
• I am tempted
• does
• by evil

Translation Words - UST

• God
• God
• When we are tempted to sin
• who is tempting us
• tries to persuade...to do evil
• no one can persuade...to do evil
James 1:14

each person...is tempted by his own desire (ULT)
everyone...wants to do evil (UST)

A person's desire is spoken of as if it were someone else who was tempting him to sin. (See: Personification)

which drags him away and entices him (ULT)
wants to do evil...and so they do it, just as if they are falling into a trap (UST)

Evil desire continues to be spoken of as if it were a person who could drag away someone else. (See: Personification)

entices him (ULT)
as if they are falling into a trap (UST)

attracts, persuades someone to do evil

Translation Words - ULT

• is tempted
• desire

Translation Words - UST

• wants to do evil
• wants to do evil
James 1:15

Then after the desire conceives, it gives birth to sin, and after the sin is full grown, it gives birth to death (ULT)
Then, because they have desired to do evil things, they begin to do them. And when they have become ones who habitually do what is evil, if they do not turn away from their sinful behavior, they will be separated from God forever (UST)

Desire continues to be spoken of as a person, this time clearly as a woman who becomes pregnant with a child. The child is identified as sin. Sin is another female baby that grows up, becomes pregnant, and gives birth to death. This chain of metaphors is a picture of someone who ends up dying both spiritually and physically because of his evil desires and his sin. (See: Personification and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• to sin
• sin
• desire
• to death

Translation Words - UST

• they begin to do them
• And when they have become ones who habitually do what is evil, if they do not turn away
• evil things
• from their sinful behavior, they will be separated from God forever

ULT
15 Then after the desire conceives, it gives birth to sin, and after the sin is full grown, it gives birth to death.

UST
15 Then, because they have desired to do evil things, they begin to do them. And when they have become ones who habitually do what is evil, if they do not turn away from their sinful behavior, they will be separated from God forever.
James 1:16

Do not be deceived (ULT)
stop deceiving yourselves (UST)

“Do not let anyone deceive you” or “Stop deceiving yourselves”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- brothers
- beloved
- be deceived

**Translation Words - UST**

- fellow believers
- whom I love
- deceiving yourselves

ULT

16 Do not be deceived, my beloved brothers.

UST

16 My fellow believers whom I love, stop deceiving yourselves.
James 1:17

Every good gift and every perfect gift (ULT)
Every truly good and perfect gift (UST)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. James uses them to emphasize that anything good that a person has comes from God. (See: Doublet)

the Father of lights (ULT)
God the Father...who gives us light (UST)

God, the creator of all the lights in the sky (sun, moon, and stars), is said to be their “Father.” (See: Metaphor)

With him there is no changing or shadow because of turning (ULT)
God does not change like created things change, like shadows that appear and disappear. God never changes and He is always good (UST)

This expression pictures God as an unchanging light, like the sun, moon, planets, and stars in the sky. This is in contrast to shadows here on earth that constantly change. Alternate translation: “God does not change. He is as constant as the sun, moon, and stars in the sky, rather than like shadows which appear and disappear on earth” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- gift
- Father
- good
- shadow
- of lights
- because of turning
- perfect

Translation Words - UST

- truly good and...gift
- truly good and...gift
- God the Father
- truly good and...gift
- that appear and disappear. God never changes and He is always good
- who gives us light
- that appear and disappear. God never changes and He is always good
- perfect
James 1:18

to give us birth (ULT)
to give us spiritual life (UST)

God, who brought us eternal life, is spoken of as if he had given us birth. (See: Metaphor)

by the word of truth (ULT)
when we trusted in his true message. So now believers in Jesus have become (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “the message about the truth” or 2) “the true message.”

so that we would be a kind of firstfruits (ULT)
first people to have…which only (UST)

James is using the traditional Hebrew idea of firstfruits as a way to describe the value of the Christian believers to God. He implies that there will be many more believers in the future. Alternate translation: “so that we would be like an offering of firstfruits” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT
• of truth
• of firstfruits
• created

Translation Words - UST
• when we trusted in his true message. So now believers in Jesus have become
• first people to have...which only
• true spiritual life
James 1:19

You know this (ULT)
you know that (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “Know this” as a command, to pay attention to what I am about to write or 2) “You know this” as a statement, that I am about to remind you of something that you already know.

be...every man...quick to hear, slow to speak (ULT)
every one of you should be eager...every one of you should be eager...to pay attention to God's true message. You should not quickly speak your own thoughts, nor (UST)

These sayings are idioms that mean people should first listen intently, and then consider carefully what they say. Here “slow to speak” does not mean speaking slowly. (See: Idiom)

to hear, slow...to anger (ULT)
to pay attention to God’s true message. You should not quickly speak your own thoughts, nor...quickly get angry (UST)

“not get angry quickly”

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• to anger
• beloved
• You know this

Translation Words - UST

• fellow believers
• quickly get angry
• whom I love
• you know that
James 1:20

_the anger...of man does not work the righteousness of God (ULT)_

_get angry we...do...we...cannot...the righteous things that God wants us to do (UST)_

When a person is always angry, he cannot do God's work, which is righteous.

Translation Words - ULT

- the righteousness
- of God
- the anger
- work

Translation Words - UST

- the righteous things
- that God wants us
to do
- get angry we...do
- to do

ULT

20 For the anger of man does not work the righteousness of God.

UST

20 because when we get angry we cannot do the righteous things that God wants us to do.
James 1:21

take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil (ULT)
stop doing all kinds of evil, and (UST)

Sin and evil are spoken of here as if they were clothing that could be taken off. Alternate translation: “stop doing all filthy sins and stop doing abundant amounts of evil” (See: Metaphor)

take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil (ULT)
stop doing all kinds of evil, and (UST)

Here the expressions “sinful filth” and “evil” share similar meanings. James uses them to emphasize how bad sin is. Alternate translation: “stop doing every kind of sinful behavior” (See: Doublet)

sinful filth (ULT)
of evil, and (UST)

Here “filth,” that is, dirt, stands for sin and evil. (See: Metaphor)

In humility (ULT)
humbly (UST)

“Without pride” or “Without arrogance”

receive the implanted word (ULT)
accept the message that God planted in your inner beings, because (UST)

The expression “implant” means to place one thing inside of another. Here God’s word is spoken of as if it were a plant made to grow inside believers. Alternate translation: “obey the message God has spoken to you” (See: Metaphor)

to save your souls (ULT)
to save you (UST)

What a person is saved from can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “save you from God’s judgment” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

your souls (ULT)
you (UST)

Here the word “souls” refers to persons. Alternate translation: “yourselves” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• to save
• word
• humility
• which is able
Translation Notes

Introduction to James :: James 1:21

- souls
- of evil
- receive

Translation Words - UST

- to save
- message
- humbly
- he is able
- you
- of evil, and
- accept
James 1:22

But be doers of the word (ULT)
Do what God commands in his message (UST)

“Be people who follow God’s instructions”

deceiving yourselves (ULT)
think wrongly that God will save them (UST)

“fooling yourselves”

Translation Words - UST

• what God commands in his message
• think wrongly that God will save them

Translation Words - UST

• of the word
• deceiving
James 1:23

For if anyone is a hearer of the word (ULT)  
Some people hear God's message (UST)

“For if anyone listens to the God's message in the scriptures”

but not a doer (ULT)  
but do not do what it says (UST)

The word “is” and “of the word” are understood from the previous phrase. The noun “doer” can also be expressed with the verbs “do” or “obey.” Alternate translation: “but is not a doer of the word” or “but does not obey the word” (See: Ellipsis)

he is like a man who examines his natural face in a mirror (ULT)  
They are like someone who looks at his face in a mirror (UST)

A person who hears God's word is like someone who looks in the mirror. (See: Simile)

his natural face (ULT)  
at his face (UST)

The word “natural” clarifies that James is using the ordinary meaning of the word “face.” Alternate translation: “his face”

Translation Words - ULT

- of the word
- face
- is like

Translation Words - UST

- God's message
- at...face
- are like
James 1:24

and then goes away and immediately forgets what he was like (ULT)
he goes away from the mirror and immediately forgets what he looks like (UST)

It is implied that though he may see that he needs to do something, such as wash his face or fix his hair, he walks away and forgets to do it. This what a person who does not obey God's word is like. Alternate translation: “then goes away and immediately forgets to do what he saw he needed to do” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Simile)

Translation Words - ULT
  • what...like

Translation Words - UST
  • what he looks like
James 1:25

the person...who looks carefully into the perfect law (ULT)
But other people look closely...But other people look closely...at God's message, which is perfect (UST)

This expression continues the image of the law as a mirror. (See: Simile)

the perfect law of freedom (ULT)
God's message, which is perfect and which sets people free (UST)

The relationship between the law and freedom can be expressed clearly. Here "freedom" probably refers to freedom from sin. Alternate translation: “the perfect law that gives freedom” or “the perfect law that makes those who follow it free” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

this man will be blessed in his actions (ULT)
God will bless them because of what they do (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will bless this man as he obeys the law” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- blessed
- of the work
- the...law
- perfect
- of freedom

Translation Words - UST

- God will bless
- what God tells them to do
- God's message
- which is perfect
- and which sets people free
James 1:26

thinks himself to be religious (ULT)
think that they worship God rightly (UST)

“thinks he worships God correctly”

his tongue (ULT)
they habitually speak evil talk (UST)

Controlling one's tongue stands for controlling one's speech. Alternate translation: “what he says” (See: Metonymy)

he deceives (ULT)
Those people are wrong (UST)

gets someone to believe something that is not true

his heart (ULT)
in thinking that they worship God rightly (UST)

Here “heart” refers to his belief or thoughts. Alternate translation: “himself” (See: Metonymy)

his religion is worthless (ULT)
The fact is that they worship God in vain (UST)

“he worships God uselessly”

Translation Words - ULT

• heart
• is worthless
• tongue
• he deceives

Translation Words - UST

• in thinking that...worship God rightly
• worship God in vain
• they habitually speak evil talk
• Those people are wrong
James 1:27

pure and unspoiled (ULT)
and God approves of them (UST)

James speaks of religion, the way one worships God, as if it could be physically pure and unspoiled. These are traditional ways for Jews to say that something is acceptable to God. Alternate translation: “Completely acceptable” (See: Doublet and Metaphor)

before our God and Father (ULT)
One of the things that God has told us...God, who is our Father...and God approves of them (UST)

directed to God (See: Metaphor)

the fatherless (ULT)
orphans (UST)

“the orphans”

in their affliction (ULT)
who suffer hardship (UST)

The fatherless and widows are suffering because their fathers or husbands have died.

and to keep oneself unstained by the world (ULT)
Those who do that, and who do not think or act immorally like those who do not obey God, truly worship (UST)

Sin in the world is spoken of as something dirty that can stain a person. Alternate translation: “to not allow the evil in the world to cause oneself to sin” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• world
• pure
• God and Father
• affliction

Translation Words - UST

• God
• those who do not obey God, truly worship
• and God approves of them
• God, who is our Father
• who suffer hardship
James 2

James 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Favoritism

Some of James's readers treated rich and powerful people well and treated poor people badly. This is called favoritism, and James tells them that this is wrong. God wants his people to treat both rich people and poor people well.

Justification

Justification is what happens when God makes a person righteous. James says here that God makes righteous or justifies people who do good works along with having faith. (See: just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification and righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness and faith)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Quotation marks

The words “Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works” are hard to understand. Some people think that they are what “someone may say,” like the words in the quotation marks. Most versions translate them as words that James is saying back to that “someone.”

“You have...I have”

Some people think that the words “you” and “I” are metonyms for “some people” and “other people.” If they are correct, verse 18 could be translated, “Someone may say, Some people have faith and other people have works. Not everyone has both.” If the next sentence is also what “someone may say,” it could be translated “Some people show their faith without works, and other people show their faith by their works. Both have faith.” In both cases, the reader will understand only if you add the extra sentence. It is probably best to translate as the ULT does. (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
James 2:1

Connecting Statement:

James continues to tell the scattered Jewish believers how to live by loving one another and reminds them not to favor rich people over poor brothers.

My brothers (ULT)
My brothers and sisters (UST)

James considers his audience to be Jewish believers. Alternate translation: “My fellow believers” or “My brothers and sisters in Christ”

hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)
as you at the same time trust in our Lord Jesus the Messiah (UST)

Believing in Jesus Christ is spoken of as if it were an object that one could hold onto. (See: Metaphor)

in our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)
our Lord Jesus the Messiah (UST)

The word “our” includes James and his fellow believers. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

favoritism toward certain people (ULT)
think of honoring some people more than others (UST)

the desire to help some people more than others

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus Christ
- in...Lord
- brothers
- the Lord of glory
- to faith
- Christ
- favoritism toward certain people

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus the Messiah
- Lord
- brothers and sisters
- the one who is greater than anything
- as you at the same time trust in
- the Messiah
- think of honoring some people more than others
James 2:2

suppose that...someone (ULT)
suppose that...a person who wears gold rings and fine clothes enters your meeting place (UST)

James starts to describe a situation where the believers might give more honor to a rich person than to a poor person. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

wearing gold rings and fine clothes (ULT)
a person who wears gold rings and fine clothes enters your meeting place (UST)

“dressed like a wealthy person”

Translation Words - ULT

• meeting
• wearing gold rings
• and...clothes

Translation Words - UST

• a person who wears gold rings and fine clothes enters your meeting place
• a person who wears gold rings and fine clothes enters your meeting place
• a person who wears gold rings and fine clothes enters your meeting place

ULT

2 For suppose that someone enters your meeting wearing gold rings and fine clothes, and there also enters a poor man in dirty clothes.

UST

2 For example, suppose that a person who wears gold rings and fine clothes enters your meeting place. Then suppose that a poor person who wears shabby clothes also comes in.
James 2:3

You sit here in a good place (ULT)
Please sit here in this nice seat (UST)

sit in this place of honor

You...stand over there (ULT)
Please sit...stand over there (UST)

move to a place with less honor

sit...at my feet (ULT)
Please sit...on the floor (UST)

move to a humble place

Translation Words - ULT

- fine
- in a good place
- feet

Translation Words - UST

- in fine clothes
- in this nice seat
- the floor

ULT
3 But if you look at the person wearing fine clothes and say, “You sit here in a good place,” but you say to the poor man, “You stand over there” or “Sit at my feet,”

UST
3 And suppose that you show special attention to the one dressed in fine clothes by saying, “Please sit here in this nice seat!” and you say to the poor one, “You stand over there or sit on the floor!”
James 2:4

are you not judging among yourselves? Have you not become judges with evil thoughts (ULT)
You have then judged one another for wrong reasons (UST)

James is using rhetorical questions to teach and possibly scold his readers. Alternate translation: “you are making judgments among yourselves and becoming judges with evil thoughts.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• are you...judging
• evil
• judges

Translation Words - UST

• You have then judged one another
• for wrong reasons
• You have then judged one another
James 2:5

Listen, my beloved brothers (ULT)
Listen to me, my brothers and sisters whom I love (UST)

James was exhorting his readers as family. “Pay attention, my dear fellow believers”

did not God choose the poor of the world to be rich in faith and to be heirs of the kingdom that he promised to those who love him (ULT)
God has chosen poor people who seem to have nothing of value, to trust in him very much. So he will give them great things when he rules everyone everywhere. This is what he has promised to do for everyone who loves him (UST)

Here James uses a rhetorical question to teach his readers not to show favoritism. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: “God has chosen...love him” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the poor (ULT)
poor people who seem to have nothing of value (UST)

This refers to poor people in general. Alternate translation: “poor people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

to be rich in faith (ULT)
to trust in him very much (UST)

Having much faith is spoken of as being wealthy or rich. The object of faith may have to be specified. Alternate translation: “have strong faith in Christ” (See: Metaphor)

to be heirs (ULT)
So he will give them great things (UST)

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- to those who love
- brothers
- God
- world
- choose
- kingdom
- beloved
- faith
- he promised
- to be heirs
Translation Words - UST

• for everyone who loves
• brothers and sisters
• God has chosen
• poor people who seem to have nothing of value
• God has chosen
• when he rules everyone everywhere
• whom I love
• to trust in him
• This is what he has promised to do
• So he will give them great things
James 2:6

But you have dishonored (ULT)
But you dishonor (UST)

James is speaking to his whole audience. (See: Forms of You)

have dishonored the poor (ULT)
dishonor the poor people (UST)

“you have shamed poor people”

Is it not the rich who oppress you (ULT)
Think about it! It is the rich people, not the poor people, who are causing you to suffer (UST)

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct his readers. Alternate translation: “It is rich people who oppress you.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Nominal Adjectives)

the rich (ULT)
Think about it! It is the...rich people (UST)

This refers to rich people in general. Alternate translation: “rich people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Is it...who oppress you (ULT)
not the poor people, who are causing you to suffer (UST)

“who treat you badly”

Are they not the ones...who drag you to court (ULT)
It is the rich people...who forcibly take you to court to accuse you in front of judges (UST)

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct his readers. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: “The rich people are the ones...to court.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

who drag you to court (ULT)
who forcibly take you to court to accuse you in front of judges (UST)

“forcibly take you to court to accuse you in front of judges” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Is it...who oppress

Translation Words - UST

- not the poor people, who are causing...to suffer
James 2:7

Do they not insult the good name by which you have been called (ULT)
And they are the ones who speak evil against the Lord Jesus the Messiah, the one who is worthy of praise, to whom you belong (UST)

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct and teach his readers. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: “The rich people insult...have been called.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the good name by which you have been called (ULT)
the Lord Jesus the Messiah, the one who is worthy of praise, to whom you belong (UST)

This refers to Christ's name. Alternate translation: “the name of Christ who called you” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• have been called
• name
• good
• Do...insult

Translation Words - UST

• one who is worthy of praise, to whom you belong
• Lord Jesus the Messiah
• Lord Jesus the Messiah
• are the ones who speak evil against
James 2:8

you fulfill (ULT)
you follow (UST)

The word “you” refers to the Jewish believers. (See: Forms of You)

you fulfill the royal law (ULT)
you follow the royal law (UST)

“obey God’s law.” The law is “royal” because God, the true king, is the one who gave it to people.

You shall love your neighbor as yourself (ULT)
Love your neighbor as you love yourself.” If you love others (UST)

James is quoting from the book of Leviticus.

your neighbor (ULT)
your neighbor (UST)

“all people” or “everyone”

you do well (ULT)
you are doing what is right (UST)

“you are doing well” or “you are doing what is right”

Translation Words - ULT

• You shall love
• scripture
• royal
• the...law
• as
• neighbor

Translation Words - UST

• Love
• they are written in the scriptures, you will see the command
• royal
• the...law
• as you love
• neighbor
James 2:9

if...you favor certain people (ULT)
if...you honor some people more than others (UST)

“give special treatment to” or “give honor to”

you are committing sin (ULT)
you are doing wrong. And because you do not do what God commanded us to do (UST)

“sinning.” That is, breaking the law.

and you are convicted by the law as lawbreakers (ULT)
he condemns you because you disobey his laws (UST)

Here the law is spoken of as if it were a human judge. Alternate translation: “guilty of breaking God's law” (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

• sin
• you favor certain people
• lawbreakers
• law
• you are committing
• as
• and you are convicted

Translation Words - UST

• you are doing wrong. And because you do not do what God commanded us to do
• you honor some people more than others
• you disobey his laws
• you disobey his laws
• you are doing wrong. And because you do not do what God commanded us to do
• you disobey his laws
• he condemns you because
James 2:10

For whoever obeys (ULT)
Those who they obey (UST)

“For anyone who obeys“

except that he stumbles in just a single way, has become guilty of breaking the whole law (ULT)
disobey only one of God’s laws, even if...God considers to be as guilty as anyone who has disobeyed all of his laws (UST)

Stumbling is falling down while one is trying to walk. Disobeying one point of the law is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking.
(See: Metaphor)

in just a single way (ULT)
only one of God's laws, even if (UST)

because of disobedience to just one requirement of the law

Translation Words - ULT

• law
• guilty of breaking
• obeys
• he stumbles

Translation Words - UST

• his other laws
• as guilty as anyone who has disobeyed
• they obey
• disobey
James 2:11

For the one who said (ULT)
For example, God said (UST)

This refers to God, who gave the law to Moses.

Do not commit adultery (ULT)
Do not commit adultery,” but he (UST)

To “commit” is to do an action.

if…you do not commit adultery, but you do commit murder, you have become (ULT)
if…you do not commit adultery but you murder someone, you have become (UST)

Here “you” means “each one of you.” Although James was writing to many Jewish believers, in this case, he used the singular form as if he was writing to each person individually. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• a lawbreaker
• commit adultery
• you...commit adultery
• a lawbreaker

Translation Words - UST

• God's laws
• commit adultery,” but he
• commit adultery
• a person who disobeys God's laws
James 2:12

So speak and act

“So you must speak and obey.” James commanded the people to do this.

those who will be judged by means of the law of freedom (ULT)
God will judge...using...the law that frees us from being punished for our sins (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who know that God will judge them by means of the law of freedom” (See: Active or Passive)

by means of the law (ULT)
using...the law (UST)

This passage implies that it is God who will judge according to his law.

of the law of freedom (ULT)
the law that frees us from being punished for our sins (UST)

“the law that gives true freedom”

Translation Words - ULT

• judged
• of the law
• as
• of freedom

Translation Words - UST

• God will judge
• the law
• using
• that frees us from being punished for our sins
James 2:13

Mercy triumphs over judgment (ULT)  
then we will not fear God when he judges us (UST)

“Mercy is better than” or “Mercy defeats.” Here mercy and justice are spoken of as if they were persons. (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

• mercy
• Mercy (2)
• For judgment comes
• over judgment

Translation Words - UST

• act mercifully toward others. But if we are merciful to others
• then we will not fear God when he judges us (2)
• judges us
• then we will not fear God when he judges us

ULT

13 For judgment comes without mercy to those who have shown no mercy. Mercy triumphs over judgment.

UST

13 Because when God judges us, he will not act mercifully toward those who do not act mercifully toward others. But if we are merciful to others, then we will not fear God when he judges us.
James 2:14

Connecting Statement:

James encourages the scattered believers to show their faith before others, just as Abraham showed others his faith by his works.

What good is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith, but he has no works (ULT)

My brothers and sisters, some people say, “I believe in the Lord Jesus the Messiah,” but they do not do good things. What they say will do them no good. If they only believe with words, God will certainly not save (UST)

James is using a rhetorical question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: “It is no good at all, fellow believers, if someone says he has faith, but he has no works.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

if someone says he has faith, but he has no works (ULT)

some people say, “I believe in the Lord Jesus the Messiah,” but they do not do good things...

If they only believe with words, God will certainly not save (UST)

The can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “faith” and “works.” Alternate translation: “If someone says he believes in God but he does not do what God commands” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Can that faith save him (ULT)

God will certainly not save...them (UST)

James is using a rhetorical question to teach his audience. This can be restated to remove the abstract noun “faith.” Alternate translation: “That faith cannot save him.” or “If a person does not do what God commands, then just saying he believes in God will not save him.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Abstract Nouns)

save him (ULT)

God will certainly not save...them (UST)

“spare him from God’s judgment”

Translation Words - ULT

- save
- brothers
- Can
- works
- faith
- faith
- good is it

Translation Words - UST

- God will certainly not save
- brothers and sisters
• God will certainly not save
• say...I believe in the Lord Jesus the Messiah...but they
• they only believe with words
• God will certainly not save
• will do them no good
James 2:15

a brother or sister (ULT)

a brother or sister (UST)

a fellow believer in Christ, whether male or female

Translation Words - ULT

• a brother
• sister

Translation Words - UST

• a brother
• sister

ULT
15 Suppose that a brother or sister is badly clothed and lacks food for the day.

UST
15 To illustrate, suppose that a brother or sister is continually lacking clothes or food for each day.
James 2:16

stay warm (ULT)
get warm (UST)

This means either “have enough clothes to wear” or “have a place to sleep.” (See: Metonymy)

be filled (ULT)
find the food you need (UST)

The thing that fills them is food. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “be filled with food” or “have enough to eat” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for the body (ULT)
for their bodies (UST)

to eat, to wear, and to live comfortably (See: Metonymy)

what good is that (ULT)
that will be no help to them (UST)

James uses a rhetorical question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: “that is not good.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• body
• good is that
• peace

Translation Words - UST

• bodies
• that will be no help to them
• Do not worry, go away
faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead (ULT)
you do not do good deeds to help others, what you say about believing in the Messiah is as useless as a dead person! You do not really believe in the Messiah (UST)

James speaks of faith as if it were alive if one does good works, and of faith as if it were dead if one does not do good deeds. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “faith” and “works.” Alternate translation: “a person who says he believes God, but does not do what God commands, does not really believe God” (See: Metaphor and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- works
- faith
- dead

Translation Words - UST

- do good deeds to help others
- what you say about believing in the Messiah
- as useless as a dead person! You do not really believe in the Messiah
James 2:18

Yet someone may say (ULT)
But someone may say to me (UST)

James describes a hypothetical situation where someone objects to his teaching. James seeks to correct his audience's understanding of faith and works. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

You have faith, and I have works.” Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works (ULT)
God saves some people only because they trust in him, and he saves others because they do good deeds for people.” I would answer that person, “You cannot prove to me that people truly trust in God if they do not do good deeds for others! But by doing good deeds for others I will prove to you that I truly trust in God (UST)

James is describing how someone may argue against his teaching and how he would respond. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “faith” and “works.” Alternate translation: “It is acceptable that you believe God and that I do what God commands.’ Prove to me that you can believe God and not do what he commands, and I will prove to you that I believe God by doing what he commands” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• works
• works
• works (2)
• faith
• faith (2)
• faith (3)

Translation Words - UST

• he saves...good deeds
• good deeds
• for others! But by doing good deeds for others (2)
• God saves some people only because they trust in him
• that people truly trust in God (2)
• truly trust in God (3)
James 2:19

But even the demons believe that...they tremble (ULT)
But the demons also believe that...they tremble because they also know that God truly lives, and that He will punish them (UST)

“the demons also believe, but they shake with fear.” James contrasts the demons with those who claim to believe and not do good deeds. James states that the demons are wiser because they fear God while the others do not.

Translation Words - ULT
- God
- believe
- believe that
- demons
- they tremble

Translation Words - UST
- real God who truly lives, and
- believe
- also believe that
- demons
- they tremble because they also know that God truly lives, and that He will punish them
James 2:20

But do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is useless (ULT)
Also, you foolish person, I will give you proof that if someone says, “I trust in God,” but does not do good deeds, what that person says does not help him in any way (UST)

James uses this question to introduce the next part of his teaching. Alternate translation: “Listen to me, foolish man, and I will show that faith without works is useless.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

that faith without works is useless (ULT)
Also, you foolish person, I will give you proof that if someone says…I…trust in God,” but does not do good deeds, what that person says does not help him in any way (UST)

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “faith” and “works.” Alternate translation: “that if you do not do what God commands, then it is useless for you to say that you believe in God” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• foolish
• works
• faith
• useless
• to know

Translation Words - UST

• Also, you foolish person, I will give you proof that if someone says…I
• good deeds
• what that person says
• does not help him in any way
• Also, you foolish person, I will give you proof that if someone says…I
James 2:21

General Information:

Since these are Jewish believers, they know the story of Abraham, about whom God had told them long ago in his word.

Was not Abraham our father justified by works when he offered up Isaac his son on the altar (ULT)

We all honor Abraham, our ancestor. He tried to obey what God told him to do; he tried to give his son Isaac to God on the altar. God considered Abraham to be a righteous person for trying to obey him (UST)

This rhetorical question is used to rebut the foolish man's arguments from James 2:18, who refuses to believe that faith and works go together. Alternate translation: “Abraham our father was certainly justified...on the altar.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Was...justified by works (ULT)

God considered Abraham to be a righteous person...for trying to obey him (UST)

James speaks of works as if they were objects that one can own. Alternate translation: “justified by doing good deeds” (See: Metaphor)

father (ULT)

ancestor. He tried to obey what God told him to do (UST)

Here “father” is used in the sense of “ancestor.”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- son
- works
- Was...justified
- Abraham
- Isaac
- father

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- son
- for trying to obey him
- God considered Abraham to be a righteous person
- We all honor Abraham
- Isaac
- ancestor. He tried to obey what God told him to do
James 2:22

You see (ULT)
In this way, Abraham trusted in God (UST)

The word “you” is singular, referring to the hypothetical man. James is addressing his whole audience as if they were one person.

You see (ULT)
In this way, Abraham trusted in God (UST)

The word “see” is a metonym. Alternate translation: “You understand” (See: Metonymy)

faith worked with his works, and that by works his faith was fully developed

James speaks as if “faith” and “works” are things that can work together and help each other. Alternate translation: “because Abraham believed God, he did what God commanded. And because Abraham did what God commanded, he believed God completely”

You see (ULT)
In this way, Abraham trusted in God (UST)

James again addresses his audience directly by using the plural form of “you.”

Translation Words - ULT

- works
- works
- faith
- faith (2)
- was fully developed

Translation Words - UST

- obeyed him
- When he obeyed him
- In this way, Abraham trusted in God
- what he was trusting (2)
- he finished doing
James 2:23

The scripture...was fulfilled (ULT)
it happened as it is written in the scriptures (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “This fulfilled the scripture” (See: Active or Passive)

it was counted to him as righteousness (ULT)
God viewed...him as someone who did the right thing (UST)

“God regarded his faith as righteousness.” Abraham’s faith and righteousness were treated as if they were able to be counted as having value. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• as righteousness
• he was called
• God
• of God
• scripture
• believed
• was fulfilled
• Abraham

Translation Words - UST

• as someone who did the right thing
• said about Abraham, “He is
• in God
• God
• in the scriptures
• truly trusted
• it happened as it is written
• Abraham
James 2:24

it is by works that a man is justified, and not only by faith (ULT)
people do good deeds that God considers them to be righteous, and not only because they trust in him (UST)

“actions and faith are what justify a person, and not only faith.”
James speaks of works as if they were objects to obtain. (See: Active or Passive and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• works
• faith
• that...is justified

Translation Words - UST

• people do good deeds that
• they trust in him
• God considers...to be righteous
James 2:25

But in the same way also, was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works (ULT)

Similarly, it was certainly because of what Rahab did that God considered her to be good. Rahab had been a prostitute, but (UST)

James says that what was true of Abraham was also true of Rahab. Both were justified by works.

was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works, when she welcomed the messengers and sent them away by another road (ULT)

because of what...Rahab...did that God considered her to be good. Rahab had been a prostitute...she cared for the messengers who came to spy out the land, and she helped them to escape by sending them home on a different road from the one that they came on (UST)

James is using this rhetorical question to instruct his audience. Alternate translation: “it was what Rahab the prostitute did that justified her...another road.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

Rahab the prostitute (ULT)
Rahab...Rahab had been a prostitute (UST)

James expected his audience to know the Old Testament story about the woman Rahab.

was...justified by works (ULT)
because of what...did that...God considered her to be good (UST)

James speaks of works as something to possess. (See: Metaphor)

messengers (ULT)
messengers who came to spy out the land (UST)

people who bring news from another place

sent them away by another road (ULT)
sending them home on a different road from the one that they came on (UST)

“then helped them escape and leave the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- works
- was...justified
- Rahab
- when she welcomed
- messengers
- sent them away
• prostitute
• in the same way

Translation Words - UST

• because of what...did that
• God considered her to be good
• Rahab
• she cared for
• messengers who came to spy out the land
• sending them home
• Rahab had been a prostitute
• Similarly, it was certainly
James 2:26

For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, even so faith apart from works is dead (ULT)
Just as when a person no longer breathing is dead and his body is useless, in the same way, someone who says he trusts in God but does nothing good trusts in God uselessly (UST)

James is speaking of faith without works as if it were a dead body without the spirit. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- body
- works
- the spirit
- faith
- dead
- as

Translation Words - UST

- body is useless
- but does nothing good
- a person no longer breathing
- someone who says he trusts in God
- dead
- trusts in God uselessly
- Just as when
James 3 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

James teaches his readers that they should live to please God by reminding them of things that they know from everyday life. (See: Metaphor)
James 3:1

Not many of you (ULT)
not many of you (UST)

James is making a generalized statement. (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

my brothers (ULT)
My brothers and sisters (UST)

“my fellow believers”

we who teach will be judged more strictly (ULT)
God will judge us teachers more severely than he will judge other people (UST)

This passage speaks of stricter judgment that will come from God on those who teach others about him. Alternate translation: “God will judge us who teach more severely because we know his word better than some people whom we have taught” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

we who teach

James includes himself and other teachers, but not the readers, so the word “we” is exclusive. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• judged
• we who teach will be
• teachers
• for you know

Translation Words - UST

• brothers and sisters
• God will judge us teachers
• God will judge us teachers
• teachers of God's word
• because you know
James 3:2

we all stumble (ULT)
we do what is wrong (UST)

James speaks of himself, other teachers, and the readers, so the word “we” is inclusive. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

stumble (ULT)
we do what is wrong (UST)

Sinning is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking. Alternate translation: “fail” or “sin” (See: Metaphor)

does not stumble in words (ULT)
those who control what they say (UST)

“does not sin by saying wrong things”

he is a perfect man (ULT)
will be all that God intends them to be (UST)

“he is spiritually mature”

to control even his whole body (ULT)
But...to control all their actions (UST)

James is referring to one’s heart, emotions, and actions. Alternate translation: “control his behavior” or “control his actions” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• his...body
• able
• stumble
• stumble
• perfect

Translation Words - UST

• their actions
• They will be able
• we do what is wrong
• those who control what they say
• will be all that God intends them to be

ULT
2 For we all stumble in many ways. If anyone does not stumble in words, he is a perfect man, able to control even his whole body.

UST
2 In many ways we do what is wrong. But those who control what they say will be all that God intends them to be. They will be able to control all their actions.
James 3:3

General Information:

James is developing an argument that small things can control big things.

Now if we put bits into horses’ mouths (ULT)
To illustrate, if we put a small metal bit into the mouth of a horse (UST)

James speaks about horses’ bits. A bit is a small piece of metal that is placed into a horse’s mouth to control where it goes.

Now if (ULT)
To illustrate, if (UST)

“If” or “When”

horses (ULT)
of a horse (UST)

A horse is a large animal used to carry things or people.

Translation Words - ULT

• bodies
• to obey
• horses

Translation Words - UST

• large body
• in order to cause...to obey
• of a horse
James 3:4

Notice also that ships...are steered by a very small rudder

A ship is like a truck that floats on water. A rudder is a flat piece of wood or metal at the back of the ship, used to control where it goes. The word “rudder” could also be translated as “tool.”

*are driven by strong winds (ULT)*
*it can be moved by strong winds (UST)*

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “strong winds push them, they” (See: Active or Passive)

*by...are steered...a very small rudder to wherever the pilot desires (ULT)*
*by...a very small rudder people can direct the ship wherever they want it to go (UST)*

“have a small tool that a person can use to control where the ship goes”
James 3:5

Likewise (ULT)
In the same way, although our (UST)

This word signals the analogy of the tongue to the horses’ bits and the ships’ rudders mentioned in the previous verses. Alternate translation: “In the same way”

it boasts great things (ULT)
if we do not control them, we can harm people by talking big (UST)

Here “things” is a general word for everything about which these people are proud.

Notice also (ULT)
Think...about how just (UST)

“Think about”

how small a fire sets on fire a large forest (ULT)
a small flame of fire can cause a large forest to burn (UST)

In order to help people understand the harm that the tongue can cause, James speaks of the harm that a small flame can cause. Alternate translation: “how a small flame can start a fire that burns many trees”

Translation Words - ULT

• it boasts
• tongue
• a fire
• body part

Translation Words - UST

• if we do not control them, we can harm people by talking
• tongues
• flame of fire
• very small
James 3:6

The tongue is also a fire (ULT)
Just like a fire burns a forest, when we say things that are evil, we can destroy...Just like a flame of fire (UST)

The tongue is a metonym for what people say. James calls it a fire because of the great damage it can do. Alternate translation: “The tongue is like a fire” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

a world of sinfulness...is set among our body parts (ULT)
Just like a flame of fire...many people. What we say reveals...that there is much evil within us. What we say contaminates all that we think and do...easily causes...their descendants to want to do evil for the rest of their lives (UST)

The enormous effects of sinful speaking are spoken of as if they were a world by themselves. (See: Metaphor)

staining the whole body (ULT)
and do...easily causes...the whole surrounding area to burn, what we say can cause sons and daughters...their descendants to want to do evil for the rest of their lives (UST)

Sinful speaking is spoken of metaphorically as if it stained one's body. And becoming unacceptable to God is spoken of as if it were dirt on the body. (See: Metaphor)

setting on fire the course of life (ULT)
the whole surrounding area to burn, what we say can cause sons and daughters (UST)

The phrase “course of life” refers to a person's entire life. Alternate translation: “it ruins a person's entire life” (See: Metaphor)

life. But it is itself set on fire by hell (ULT)
the whole surrounding area to burn, what we say can cause sons and daughters...and...It is the devil himself who influences us to speak what is evil (UST)

The word “itself” refers to the tongue. Also, here “hell” refers to the powers of evil or to the devil. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “life because the devil uses it for evil” (See: Active or Passive and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• hell
• body
• of sinfulness
• world
• is set
• tongue is
• tongue (2)
• a fire
• setting on fire
• it is itself set on fire
• body parts
• staining

Translation Words - UST

• It is the devil himself who influences us to speak what is evil
• the whole surrounding area to burn, what we say can cause sons and daughters
• Just like a flame of fire
• Just like a flame of fire
• many people. What we say reveals
• Just like a flame of fire
• many people. What we say reveals (2)
• Just like a flame of fire
• the whole surrounding area to burn, what we say can cause sons and daughters
• It is the devil himself who influences us to speak what is evil
• that there is much evil within us. What we say contaminates all that we think
• and do...easily causes...their descendants to want to do evil for the rest of their lives
James 3:7

For every kind of wild animal, bird, reptile, and sea creature is being tamed and has been tamed by mankind (ULT)
Although people are able to tame all kinds of wild animals, birds, reptiles and creatures that live in the water, and people have tamed them (UST)

The phrase “every kind” is a general statement referring to all or many kinds of wild animals. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People have learned to control many kinds of wild animals, birds, reptiles, and sea creatures” (See: Active or Passive)

reptile, and (ULT)
reptiles (UST)

This is an animal that crawls on the ground. (See: Translate Unknowns)

sea creature (ULT)
creatures that live in the water (UST)
an animal that lives in the sea

Translation Words - ULT

• of wild animal
• kind
• by mankind

Translation Words - UST

• of wild animals
• kinds
• people
James 3:8

But no human being can tame the tongue (ULT)
no one is able to control what he says. The words we speak are an (UST)

James speaks of the tongue as if it were a wild animal. Here “tongue” represents a person’s desire to speak evil thoughts. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

It is a restless evil (ULT)
uncontrolled evil (UST)

James speaks of the harm that people can cause by what they say as if the tongue were an evil and poisonous creature that can kill people. Alternate translation: “It is like a restless and evil creature, full of deadly poison” or “It is like a restless and evil creature that can kill people with its venom” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• can
• evil
• tongue
• deadly

Translation Words - UST

• is able
• evil
• what he says. The words we speak are an
• that kills
James 3:9

With it we praise (ULT)
We use our tongue to praise God, who is (UST)

“We use the tongue to say words that”

we curse men (ULT)
to ask God to do evil to people (UST)

“we ask God to harm men”

who have been made in the likeness of God (ULT)
That is very wrong, because God made people like himself (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God made in his likeness" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• we praise
• Lord
• of God
• Father
• we curse
• in...likeness

Translation Words - UST

• to praise God, who is
• Lord
• That is very wrong, because God
• Father
• to ask God to do evil
• like himself
James 3:10

Out of the same mouth come blessing and cursing (ULT)

We praise God, but with our same mouth we also ask for evil things to happen to others (UST)

The nouns “blessing” and “cursing” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “With the same mouth, a person blesses people and curses people” (See: Abstract Nouns)

My brothers (ULT)

My brothers and sisters (UST)

“Fellow Christians”

should not...these things...happen (ULT)

should not...this...be (UST)

“these things are wrong”

Translation Words - ULT

- blessing
- brothers
- cursing

Translation Words - UST

- We praise God, but
- brothers and sisters
- we...ask for evil things to happen to others
James 3:11

Connecting Statement:

After James stresses that the words of believers should not both bless and curse, he gives examples from nature to teach his readers that people who honor God by worshiping him should also live in right ways.

Does a spring pour out from its single opening both sweet and bitter water (ULT)
Surely bitter water and good water do not come out of the same spring (UST)

James uses a rhetorical question to remind believers about what happens in nature. This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: “You know that a spring does not pour out both sweet water and bitter water.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
• a spring

Translation Words - UST
• of the same spring
James 3:12

Is a fig tree, my brothers, able to make olives (ULT)
My brothers and sisters, a fig tree cannot produce olives (UST)

James uses another rhetorical question to remind the believers about what happens in nature. Alternate translation: “Brothers, you know that a fig tree cannot grow olives.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

my brothers (ULT)
My brothers and sisters (UST)

“my fellow believers”

Or a grapevine, figs (ULT)
Nor can a grapevine produce figs (UST)

The word “make” is understood from the previous phrase. James uses another rhetorical question to remind the believers about what happens in nature. Alternate translation: “Or does a grapevine make figs?” or “And a grapevine cannot grow figs.” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• a grapevine
• water
• a fig tree
• figs
• olives

Translation Words - UST

• brothers and sisters
• a grapevine
• what is good, and we should not speak what is evil
• a fig tree
• produce figs
• olives
James 3:13

Who is wise and understanding among you (ULT)
If any of you thinks that you are wise and know much, you should always (UST)

James uses this question to teach his audience about proper behavior. The words “wise” and “understanding” are similar. Alternate translation: “I will tell you how a wise and understanding person is to act.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Doublet)

Let that person show a good life by his works in the humility of wisdom (ULT)
act in a good way to show people that your good deeds are the result of your being truly wise. Being wise helps us to act gently toward others (UST)

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “humility” and “wisdom.” Alternate translation: “That person should live a good life by doing the kind of deeds that come from being humble and wise” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• the humility
• is wise
• of wisdom
• works
• a good
• understanding

Translation Words - UST

• Being wise helps us to act gently toward others
• thinks that you are wise
• wise
• good deeds
• act in a good way
• know much, you should always
James 3:14

if...you have bitter jealousy and ambition in your heart (ULT)
if...you are very envious of other people and lie against them and do them wrong (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s emotions or thoughts. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “jealousy” and “ambition.” Alternate translation: “if you are jealous and selfish” or “if you desire what other people have and you want to succeed even if it harms others” (See: Metonymy and Abstract Nouns)

do not boast and lie against the truth (ULT)
you are very envious of other people and lie against them and do them wrong...you should not pretend that you are wise. By boasting like that you are saying that what is true is actually false (UST)

The abstract noun “truth” can be stated as “true.” Alternate translation: “do not boast that you are wise, because that is not true” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- jealousy
- truth
- boast

Translation Words - UST

- you are very envious of other people and lie against them and do them wrong
- you are very envious of other people and lie against them and do them wrong
- you are saying that what is true is actually false
- you should not pretend that you are wise. By boasting like that
James 3:15

This is not the wisdom that comes down from above (ULT)
Those who think like this are not wise as God wants them to be (UST)

Here “This” refers to the “bitter jealousy and strife” described in the previous verses. The phrase “from above” is a metonym that represents “heaven” which represents God himself. Alternate translation: “This is not the kind of wisdom that God teaches us from heaven” (See: Metonymy)

This is not the wisdom that comes down from above. Instead, it is earthly, unspiritual, demonic (ULT)
Those who think like this are not wise as God wants them to be. Instead, they are only thinking and acting as people who do not honor him. They think and act according to their own evil desires. They do what the demons want them to do (UST)

The abstract noun “wisdom” can be stated as “wise.” - Alternate translation: “Whoever acts like this is not wise according to what God in heaven teaches us. Instead this person is earthly, unspiritual, and demonic” (See: Abstract Nouns)

it is earthly (ULT)
honor him. They think and act according to their own evil desires (UST)

The word “earthly” refers to the values and behaviors of the people who do not honor God. Alternate translation: “not honoring to God” (See: Metonymy)

unspiritual (ULT)
honor him. They think and act according to their own evil desires (UST)

“not from the Holy Spirit” or “not spiritual”

demonic (ULT)
They do what the demons want them to do (UST)

“from demons”

Translation Words - ULT

- wisdom
- demonic
- it is earthly

Translation Words - UST

- wise
  - They do what the demons want them to do
  - honor him. They think and act according to their own evil desires
James 3:16

For where there is jealousy and ambition, there is confusion and every evil practice (ULT)
Remember that people who think like this do not control themselves. They envy other people and act as if what they were doing were right, but it is wrong. They do every sort of evil (UST)

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “jealousy,” “ambition,” and “confusion.” Alternate translation: “For when people are jealous and selfish, this causes them to act in disorderly and evil ways” (See: Abstract Nouns)

there is confusion (ULT)
it is wrong. They do (UST)

“there is disorder” or “there is chaos”

every evil practice (ULT)
every sort of evil (UST)

“every kind of sinful behavior” or “every kind of wicked deed”

Translation Words - ULT

- jealousy
- evil

Translation Words - UST

- Remember that people who think like this do not control themselves. They envy other people
- sort of evil
James 3:17

But the wisdom from above is first pure (ULT)

God in heaven makes us wise. First of all, he teaches us to be morally pure (UST)

Here “from above” is metonym that represents “heaven” which represents God himself. The abstract noun “wisdom” can be stated as “wise.” Alternate translation: “But when a person is wise according to what God in heaven teaches, he acts in ways that are first pure” (See: Abstract Nouns)

is first pure (ULT)
First of all, he teaches us to be morally pure (UST)

“is first holy”

full of mercy and good fruits (ULT)
He teaches to be kind to those who do not deserve it. He teaches us to do good things that have lasting results. He teaches us to never stop doing what is right and (UST)

Here “good fruits” refer to kind things that people do for others as a result of having wisdom from God. Alternate translation: “full of mercy and good deeds” (See: Metaphor)

and sincere (ULT)
to be honest (UST)

“and honest” or “and truthful”

Translation Words - ULT

• wisdom
• pure
• of mercy
• good
• fruits
• peace-loving

Translation Words - UST

• God in heaven makes us wise
• morally pure
• He teaches to be kind to those who do not deserve it
• He teaches us to do good things that have lasting results
• He teaches us how to make peace with others

ULT

17 But the wisdom from above is first pure, then peace-loving, gentle, reasonable, full of mercy and good fruits, impartial and sincere.

UST

17 God in heaven makes us wise. First of all, he teaches us to be morally pure. He teaches us how to make peace with others. He teaches us to be kind to others and to help them. He teaches to be kind to those who do not deserve it. He teaches us to do good things that have lasting results. He teaches us to never stop doing what is right and to be honest.
James 3:18

the fruit...of righteousness is sown in peace among those who make peace (ULT)
and act...Those who act peacefully toward others cause them to also act peacefully, with the result that they all live together...right way (UST)

People making peace is spoken of as if they were sowing seeds, and righteousness is spoken of as if it were the fruit that grows up as a result of making peace. Alternate translation: “The result of making peace is righteousness” or “Those who work peacefully to help people live in peace produce righteousness” (See: Metaphor)

among those who make...peace (ULT)
Those who act...peacefully toward others (UST)

The abstract noun “peace” can be stated as “peacefully.” Alternate translation: “cause people to live peacefully” or “help people not to be angry with each other” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- of righteousness
- is sown
- the fruit
- peace
- peace

Translation Words - UST

- right way
- cause them
- and act
- to also act peacefully, with the result that they all live together
- peacefully toward others
James 4

James 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Adultery

Writers in the Bible often speak of adultery as a metaphor for people who say they love God but do things that God hates. (See: Metaphor and godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness)

Law

James probably uses this word in James 4:11 to refer to “the royal law” (James 2:8).

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

James asks many questions because he wants his readers to think about how they are living. He wants to correct and teach them. (See: Rhetorical Question)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Humble

This word probably usually refers to people who are not proud. James uses the word here to refer to people who are not proud and who also trust in Jesus and obey him.
James 4:1

General Information:

In this section, the words “yourselves,” “your,” and “you” are plural and refer to the believers to whom James writes.

Connecting Statement:

James rebukes these believers for their worldliness and their lack of humility. He again urges them to watch how they speak to and about each other.

Where do quarrels and where do disputes among you come from (ULT)
Now I will tell you why you are fighting among yourselves and quarreling with each other. It is because (UST)

The abstract nouns “quarrels” and “disputes” mean basically the same thing and can be translated with verbs. Alternate translation: “Why do you quarrel and dispute among yourselves?” or “Why do you fight among yourselves?” (See: Doublet and Abstract Nouns)

Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members (ULT)
each of you wants to do the evil things that you enjoy doing, things that do not please your fellow believers (UST)

James uses this question to rebuke his audience. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “They come from your evil desires for things, desires that fight among your members.” or “They come from your desires for evil things, desires that fight among your members.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members (ULT)
each of you wants to do the evil things that you enjoy doing, things that do not please your fellow believers (UST)

James speaks of desires as they were enemies who waged war against the believers. In reality, of course, it is the people who have these desires who fight among themselves. Alternate translation: “They come from your desires for evil things, by which you end up harming each other” (See: Personification)

among...your...members (ULT)
among...each of you wants to do the evil things that you enjoy doing (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) there is fighting among the local believers, or 2) the fighting, that is, the conflict, is inside each believer.

Translation Words - ULT

- desires
- that fight
- members
Translation Words - UST

- each of you wants to do the evil things that you enjoy doing
- each of you wants to do the evil things that you enjoy doing
- each of you wants to do the evil things that you enjoy doing
James 4:2

You kill and covet, and you are not able to obtain (ULT) so you want to kill those who hinder you from getting them. You desire what other people have, but you are unable to get what you desire (UST)

The phrase “You kill” expresses how badly the people behave in order to get what they want. It can be translated as “You do all kinds of evil things to get what you cannot have” (See: Hyperbole)

You fight and quarrel (ULT) so you quarrel and fight with one another (UST)

The words “fight” and “quarrel” mean basically the same thing. James uses them to emphasize how much the people argue among themselves. Alternate translation: “You constantly fight” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• you...have
• You...possess (2)
• You desire
• You fight
• covet

Translation Words - UST

• you do...get those things
• You do...have what you desire (2)
• There are things that you very much desire to have
  • so you quarrel
• You desire what other people have

ULT

2 You desire, and you do not have. You kill and covet, and you are not able to obtain, You fight and quarrel. You do not possess because you do not ask.

UST

2 There are things that you very much desire to have, but you do not get those things, so you want to kill those who hinder you from getting them. You desire what other people have, but you are unable to get what you desire, so you quarrel and fight with one another. You do not have what you desire because you do not ask God for it.
James 4:3

**you ask badly (ULT)**

**you are asking for the wrong reason (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “you ask with wrong motives” or “you ask with bad attitudes” or 2) “you are asking for wrong things” or “you are asking for bad things”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- receive
- badly

**Translation Words - UST**

- he...give you what you ask for
- the wrong reason

**ULT**

3 You ask and do not receive because you ask badly, in order that you may use it for your desires.

**UST**

3 Even when you do ask him, he does not give you what you ask for because you are asking for the wrong reason. You are asking for things in order that you may use them just to enjoy yourselves in bad ways.
James 4:4

You adulteresses (ULT)
Like a woman who is unfaithful to her husband, you
are being unfaithful to God (UST)

James speaks of believers as being like wives who sleep with men
other than their husbands. Alternate translation: “You are not being
faithful to God!” (See: Metaphor)

Do you not know that friendship with the world is
hostility against God (ULT)
and not obeying him anymore...belong to this world
and are...Perhaps you do not realize that (UST)

James uses this question to teach his audience. This can be
translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You know...God!”
(See: Rhetorical Question)

friendship with the world (ULT)
belong to this world and are (UST)

This phrase refers to identifying with or participating in the world's value system and behavior. (See: Metonymy)

friendship with the world (ULT)
belong to this world and are (UST)

Here the world's value system is spoken of as if it were a person that others could be friends with. (See: Personification)

friendship with the world is hostility against God (ULT)
and not obeying him anymore...belong to this world and are (UST)

One who is friends with the world is an enemy of God. Here “friendship with the world” stands for being friends
with the world, and “hostility against God” stands for being hostile against God. Alternate translation: “friends of
the world are enemies of God” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- against God
- of God (2)
- world
- world (2)
- makes himself
- wants
- You adulteresses
- hostility
- an enemy
- Do you...know

ULT

4 You adulteresses! Do you not know
that friendship with the world is
hostility against God? So whoever wants
to be a friend of the world makes
himself an enemy of God.

UST

4 Like a woman who is unfaithful to her
husband, you are being unfaithful to
God and not obeying him
anymore. Those who behave as evil
people do belong to this world and
are enemies against God. Perhaps you
do not realize that.
Translation Words - UST

- and not obeying him anymore
- enemies against God (2)
- belong to this world and are
- Those who behave as evil people do (2)
- enemies against God
- Those who behave as evil people do
- Like a woman who is unfaithful to her husband, you are being unfaithful to God
- and not obeying him anymore
- enemies against God
- Perhaps you...realize
James 4:5

Or do you think...the scripture says in vain (ULT)
Surely you do not think...it is for no reason that God told us in the scriptures that (UST)

This is a rhetorical question James uses to exhort his audience. To speak in vain is to speak uselessly. Alternate translation: “There is a reason that scripture says”

The Spirit he caused to live in us (ULT)
the Spirit he placed in us (UST)

Some versions, including the ULT and UST, understand this as a reference to the Holy Spirit. Other versions translate this as “the spirit” and mean by it the human spirit that each person has been created to have. We suggest that you use the meaning that is presented in other translations used by your readers.

Translation Words - ULT

- scripture
- Spirit
- in vain
- deeply

Translation Words - UST

- God told us in the scriptures that
- Spirit
- it is for no reason that
- yearns for us to live our lives in ways that please him
James 4:6

But God gives more grace (ULT)
But God is powerful and very kind to us, and he wants very much to help us stop sinning (UST)

How this phrase relates to the previous verse can be made explicit: “But, even though our spirits may desire what we cannot have, God gives us even more grace, if we will humble ourselves” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

so the scripture says (ULT)
That is why the scripture says (UST)

“Because God gives more grace, the scripture”

the proud (ULT)
those who are proud (UST)

This refers to proud people in general. Alternate translation: “proud people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

to the humble (ULT)
those who are humble (UST)

This refers to humble people in general. Alternate translation: “humble people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

• grace
• grace (2)
• God
• to the humble
• the proud

Translation Words - UST

• very kind to us, and he wants very much to help us stop sinning
• he helps (2)
• God
• those who are humble
• those who are proud
James 4:7

So submit (ULT)
So submit yourselves (UST)

“Because God gives grace to the humble, submit”

submit...to God (ULT)
submit yourselves...to God (UST)

“obey God”

resist...to devil (ULT)
Resist...to God...devil (UST)

“Oppose the devil” or “Do not do what the devil wants”

he will flee (ULT)
he will run away (UST)

“he will run away”

you (ULT)
you (UST)

Here this pronoun is plural and refers to James’ audience. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• devil
• submit

Translation Words - UST

• to God
• devil
• submit yourselves
James 4:8

General Information:
The word “you” here is plural and refers to the scattered believers to whom James writes. (See: Forms of You)

Come close to God (ULT)
Come near spiritually to God (UST)

Here the idea of coming close stands for becoming honest and open with God. (See: Metaphor)

Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded (ULT)
You who are sinners, turn away from doing what is wrong and do only what is good. You who cannot decide whether you will commit yourselves to God, stop thinking wrong thoughts, and think only his thoughts (UST)

These are two phrases in parallel with each other. (See: Parallelism)

Cleanse your hands (ULT)
turn away from doing what is wrong (UST)

This expression is a command for people to do righteous acts instead of unrighteous acts. Alternate translation: “Behave in a way that honors God” (See: Metonymy)

purify your hearts (ULT)
do only what is good (UST)

Here “hearts” refers to a person’s thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: “make your thoughts and intentions right” (See: Metonymy)

you double-minded (ULT)
You who cannot decide whether you will commit yourselves to God, stop thinking wrong thoughts, and think only his thoughts (UST)

The word “double-minded” refers to a person who cannot make a firm decision about something. Alternate translation: “double-minded people” or “people who cannot decide if you want to obey God or not” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• you sinners
• God
• your hearts
• Cleanse
• purify
• your hands
• you double-minded
You who are sinners to God do only what is good turn away from doing what is wrong do only what is good turn away from doing what is wrong You who cannot decide whether you will commit yourselves to God, stop thinking wrong thoughts, and think only his thoughts
James 4:9

Grieve and mourn and cry (ULT)
Be sorrowful and weep because of the wrong that you have done (UST)

These three words have similar meanings. James uses them together to emphasize that the people should be truly sorry for not obeying God. (See: Doublet and Exclamations)

Let your laughter turn into sadness and your joy into gloom (ULT)
Do not laugh, enjoying only what you selfishly desire. Instead, be sad because you have done what is wrong (UST)

This is saying the same thing in different ways for emphasis. The abstract nouns “laughter,” “sadness,” “joy,” and “gloom” can be translated as verbs or adjectives. Alternate translation: “Stop laughing and be sad. Stop being joyful and be gloomy” (See: Parallelism and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
  • mourn
  • sadness
  • joy
  • cry

Translation Words - UST
  • of the wrong
  • Instead, be sad because you have done what is wrong
  • weep...that you have done
  • of the wrong that you have done
  • Instead, be sad because you have done what is wrong
James 4:10

Humble yourselves before the Lord (ULT)
Humble yourselves before the Lord (UST)

“Be humble toward God.” Actions done with God in mind are often spoken of as being done in his physical presence. (See: Metaphor)

he will lift you up (ULT)
he will honor you (UST)

James indicates that God will honor the humble person by saying God will pick that person up off the ground physically from where that person had prostrated himself in humility. Alternate translation: “he will honor you” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- Humble yourselves
- he will lift...up

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- Humble yourselves
- he will honor
James 4:11

General Information:
The words “you” and “your” in this section refer to the believers to whom James writes.

speak against (ULT)
speaking evil against (UST)

“speak badly about” or “oppose”

brothers (ULT)
My brothers and sisters (UST)

James speaks of the believers as if they are biological brothers. The term here includes women as well as men. Alternate translation: “fellow believers” (See: Metonymy and When Masculine Words Include Women)

but a judge (ULT)
a judge who condemns it (UST)

“but you are acting like the person who gives the law”

Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- a brother
- brother
- the law
- the law
- the law
- the law (2)
- of the law (2)
- judges
- judges
- you judge
- a judge

Translation Words - UST

- My brothers and sisters
- a fellow believer
- one who is like a brother or sister
- the law that God gave us to obey
- If you speak against his law, you are acting like
- If you speak against his law, you are acting like (2)
- a judge who condemns it (2)
- and thus condemn
- If you speak against his law, you are acting like
- If you speak against his law, you are acting like
- a judge who condemns it
James 4:12

Only one is the lawgiver and judge (ULT)
there is only one who has the authority to forgive our evil and to condemn people, and that is God (UST)

This refers to God. “God is the only one who gives laws and judges people”

But who are you, you who judge your neighbor (ULT)
But in fact...You certainly have no right to take God's place and judge others (UST)

This is a rhetorical question James uses to scold his audience. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: “You are just a human and cannot judge another human.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
- to save
- to destroy
- He is the one who is able
- you who judge
- judge
- neighbor

Translation Words - UST
- to save people
- to destroy people
- is able
- to take God's place and judge
- who has the authority to forgive our evil and to condemn people, and that is God
- others
James 4:13

spend a year there (ULT)
We will spend...a year there (UST)

James speaks of spending time as if it were money. “stay there for a year” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• make a profit
• a year

Translation Words - UST

• earn a lot of money
• a year

ULT
13 Now listen, you who say, “Today or tomorrow we will go into this city, and spend a year there, and trade, and make a profit.”

UST
13 Some of you are arrogantly saying, “Today or tomorrow we will go to a certain city. We will spend a year there and we will buy and sell things and earn a lot of money.” Now, you listen to me!
James 4:14

You who does not know what will happen tomorrow, what is your life (ULT)
You should not talk like that, because you do not know what will happen tomorrow, and you do not know how long you will live (UST)

James uses these questions to correct his audience and to teach these believers that physical life is not that important. They can be expressed as statements. Alternate translation: “No one knows what will happen tomorrow, and your life does not last very long!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

For you are a mist that appears for a little while and then disappears (ULT)
Your life is short, like a mist that appears for a short time and then disappears (UST)

James speaks of people as if they were a mist that appears and then quickly goes away. Alternate translation: “You live for only a short amount of time, and then you die” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• what is...life
• know

Translation Words - UST

• will live
• know
James 4:15

Instead, you should say (ULT)
Instead of what you are saying, you should say (UST)

“Instead, your attitude should be”

then we will live...do this or that (ULT)
we will live...do this, or we will do that (UST)

“we will live long enough to do what we have planned to do.” The word “we” does not directly refer to James or his audience but is part of the example of how James’ audience should consider the future.

Translation Words - ULT

• we will live
• Lord

Translation Words - UST

• we will live
• Lord
James 4:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- you are boasting
- boasting
- evil
- arrogant plans

Translation Words - UST

- what you are doing is boasting
- Your boasting
- evil
- what you are doing is boasting

ULT
16 But now you are boasting about your arrogant plans. All such boasting is evil.

UST
16 But what you are doing is boasting about all the things that you plan to do. Your boasting like that is evil.
James 4:17

So for anyone who knows to do good but does not do it, for him it is sin (ULT)

So if anyone knows the right thing that he should do, but he does not do it, he is sinning (UST)

Anyone who fails to do the good he knows he should do is guilty of sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- sin
- good
- for anyone who knows

Translation Words - UST

- sinning
- the right thing
- if anyone knows

ULT
17 So for anyone who knows to do good but does not do it, for him it is sin.

UST
17 So if anyone knows the right thing that he should do, but he does not do it, he is sinning.
James 5

James 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Eternity

This chapter contrasts living for things of this world, which will not last, with living for things that will last for eternity. It is also important to live with the expectation that Jesus will return soon. (See: eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever)

Oaths

Scholars are divided over whether this passage teaches all oaths are wrong. Most scholars believe some oaths are permissible and James instead is teaching Christians to have integrity.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Elijah

This story will be difficult to understand if the books of 1 and 2 Kings and 1 and 2 Chronicles have not yet been translated.

“Save his soul from death”

This probably teaches that the person who stops their sinful lifestyle will not be punished with physical death as a consequence of their sin. On the other hand, some scholars believe this passage teaches about eternal salvation. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and die, dead, deadly, death, and save, saved, safe, salvation)
James 5:1

Connecting Statement:

James warns rich people about their focus on pleasure and riches.

you who are rich (ULT)
rich people who say you believe in the Messiah. Listen to me (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) James is giving a strong warning to wealthy believers or 2) James is talking about wealthy unbelievers. Alternate translation: “you who are rich and say you honor God” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

because of the miseries coming on you (ULT)
because you will experience terrible troubles (UST)

James states that these people will suffer terribly in the future and writes as if their sufferings were objects that were coming toward them. The abstract noun “miseries” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “because you will suffer terribly in the future” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• weep

Translation Words - UST

• You should weep
James 5:2

Your riches have rotted, and your clothes have become moth-eaten (ULT)
Your wealth is worthless, as though it were rotted. Your fine clothes are worthless, as though moths had ruined them (UST)

Earthly riches do not last nor do they have any eternal value. James speaks of these events as if they had already happened. Alternate translation: “Your riches will rot, and your clothes will be eaten by moths.” (See: Predictive Past)

riches...clothes (ULT)
wealth...fine clothes (UST)

These things are mentioned as examples of things that are valuable to wealthy people.

Translation Words - ULT
• clothes

Translation Words - UST
• fine clothes
James 5:3

Your gold and your silver have become tarnished (ULT)
Your gold and silver are worthless, as though they were corroded (UST)

Earthly riches do not last nor do they have any eternal value. James speaks of these events as if they had already happened. Alternate translation: “Your riches will rot, and your clothes will be eaten by moths. Your gold and silver will become tarnished” (See: Predictive Past)

gold...silver (ULT)
gold...silver (UST)

These things are mentioned as examples of things that are valuable to wealthy people.

have become tarnished...gold...their...rust (ULT)
are worthless, as though they were corroded...gold...as rust (UST)

These phrases are used here to describe how gold and silver are ruined. Alternate translation: “are ruined...their ruined condition” or “are corroded...their corrosion”

their rust will be a witness against you (ULT)
When God judges you, this worthless wealth of yours will be evidence that you are guilty of being greedy...as rust (UST)

James wrote of their valuable things being ruined as if they were a person in a courtroom accusing the wicked of their crimes. Alternate translation: “and when God judges you, your ruined treasures will be like someone who accuses you in court. Their corrosion” (See: Personification and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

It will consume...your flesh like fire (ULT)
fire destroy things, God will severely punish you (UST)

Here the corrosion is spoken of as if it were a fire that will burn up their owners. (See: Simile and Metaphor)

your flesh (ULT)
fire destroy things, God will severely punish you (UST)

Here “flesh” stands for the physical body. (See: Metonymy)

fire (ULT)
fire destroy things, God will severely punish you (UST)

The idea of fire here is meant to lead people to remember that fire often stands for God’s punishment that will come on all the wicked. (See: Metaphor)
for the last days (ULT)
in a time when God is about to judge you (UST)

This refers to the time right before God comes to judge all people. The wicked think they are storing up riches for the future, but what they are doing is storing up judgment. Alternate translation: “for when God is about to judge you” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• flesh
• a witness
• the last days
• silver
• fire
• gold
• like
• the...days

Translation Words - UST

• fire destroy things, God will severely punish you
• evidence
• a time when God is about to judge you
• silver
• fire destroy things, God will severely punish you
• gold
• fire destroy things, God will severely punish you
• a time when God is about to judge you
James 5:4

Connecting Statement:

James continues to warn rich people about their focus on pleasure and riches.

the pay of the laborers is crying out—the pay that you have withheld from those who harvested your fields (ULT)
the wages you promised to the workmen who harvested your fields for you. The pay you kept for yourself shows me your guilt (UST)

The money that should have been paid is spoken of as a person who is shouting because of the injustice done to him. Alternate translation: “the fact that you did not pay those you hired to work in your fields shows that you have done wrong” (See: Personification)

the cries of the harvesters have gone into the ears of the Lord of hosts (ULT)
how unfair you were to them. The workers cry out to God because of the way you treat them. And the Lord God of the angel armies listens to their loud cries (UST)

The shouts of the harvesters are spoken of as if they could be heard in heaven. Alternate translation: “the Lord of hosts has heard the cries of the harvesters” (See: Metaphor)

into the ears of the Lord of hosts (ULT)
how unfair you were to them. The workers cry out to God because of the way you treat them. And the Lord God of the angel armies listens to their loud cries (UST)

God is spoken of as if he had ears as humans have. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - UST

- God because of the way you treat them. And the Lord God of the angel armies
- workmen
- shows me your guilt
- who harvested
- their
- wages you promised to

Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord of hosts
- laborers
- is crying out
- from those who harvested
- of the harvesters
- pay
James 5:5

You have fattened your hearts for a day of slaughter (ULT)
you have lived just to enjoy things, not realizing that God will severely punish you (UST)

Here people are viewed as if they were cattle, luxuriously fed on grain so they would become fattened to be slaughtered for a feast. However, no one will feast at the time of judgment. Alternate translation: “Your greed has only prepared you for harsh eternal judgment” (See: Metaphor)

your hearts (ULT)
you have lived just...to enjoy things, not realizing that (UST)

The “heart” was considered to be the center of human desire, and here stands for the entire person. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• hearts
• of slaughter
• earth
• a day

Translation Words - UST

• to enjoy things, not realizing that
• God will severely punish you
• You have...live like kings. Just like cattle fatten themselves, not realizing that
• God will severely punish you
James 5:6

You have condemned and killed the righteous person (ULT)
You have arranged for others to condemn innocent people. You have arranged for others to kill people, even though those people had not done anything (UST)

This is probably not “condemned” in the legal sense of a judge passing a sentence of death on a criminal. Instead, it probably refers to the wicked and powerful people who decide to mistreat the poor until they die.

The righteous person. He does not resist (ULT)
innocent people...wrong. They were not able to defend themselves against (UST)

“the people who do what is right. They do not.” Here “the righteous person” refers to righteous people in general and not to a specific person. Alternate translation: “righteous people. They do not” (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

He...resist you (ULT)
wrong. They were not able to defend themselves against...you. My brothers and sisters, that is what I say to the rich people who oppress you (UST)

“oppose you”

Translation Words - ULT

• You have condemned
• righteous person
• and killed

Translation Words - UST

• You have arranged for others to condemn
• innocent people
• You have arranged for others to kill people, even though those people had not done anything
So be patient, brothers, until the Lord's coming. See, the farmer awaits the valuable harvest from the ground. He is patiently waiting for it, until it receives the early and late rains.

So, my brothers and sisters, although rich people cause you to suffer, be patient until the Lord Jesus the Messiah comes back. Remember that when farmers plant a field, they wait for their valuable crops to grow. They must wait patiently for the rain that comes at the planting season and for more rain that comes just before the harvest season. They wait for the crops to grow and mature before they can harvest them.

James makes an analogy using farmers and believers to teach what it means to be patient. (See: Metaphor)
James 5:8

Make your hearts strong (ULT)
Similarly, you also should wait patiently and trust (UST)

James is equating the believers’ hearts to their will to remain committed. Alternate translation: “Stay committed” or “Keep your faith strong” (See: Metonymy)

the Lord’s coming is near (ULT)
the Lord Jesus firmly...he is coming back soon and will judge all people fairly (UST)

“The Lord will return soon”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord’s
• hearts
• Make...strong
• be patient

Translation Words - UST

• Lord Jesus firmly
• Similarly, you also should wait patiently and trust
• Similarly, you also should wait patiently and trust
• Similarly, you also should wait patiently and trust

ULT
8 You, too, be patient. Make your hearts strong, because the Lord’s coming is near.

UST
8 Similarly, you also should wait patiently and trust the Lord Jesus firmly, because he is coming back soon and will judge all people fairly.
James 5:9

Do not complain, brothers...you

James is writing to all the scattered Jewish believers.

against one another (ULT)
against each other (UST)

“about each other”

you will be not judged (ULT)
the Lord Jesus may not condemn and punish you (UST)

This can be stated in the active. Alternate translation: “Christ will not judge you” (See: Active or Passive)

See, the judge (ULT)
It is he who will judge us, and (UST)

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the judge”

the judge is standing at the door (ULT)
It is he who will judge us, and...he is ready to appear (UST)

James compares Jesus, the judge, to a person about to walk through a door to emphasize how soon Jesus will return to judge the world. Alternate translation: “the judge is coming soon” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• you will be...judged
• brothers
• judge

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord Jesus may...condemn and punish you
• My brothers and sisters
• It is he who will judge us, and
James 5:10

the suffering and patience of the prophets, those who spoke in the name of the Lord

“how the prophets who spoke in the name of the Lord suffered persecution with patience”

those who spoke in the name of the Lord (ULT)
prophets whom…the Lord God sent long ago to speak his messages (UST)

“Name” here is a metonym for the person of the Lord. Alternate translation: “by the authority of the Lord” or “spoke for the Lord to the people” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• of the Lord
• brothers
• prophets
• name
• Take
• patience

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord God sent long ago to speak his messages
• My brothers and sisters
• prophets whom
• the Lord God sent long ago to speak his messages
• consider
• they endured it patiently
James 5:11

See, we regard...as blessed (ULT)
We know that God honors and helps (UST)

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: we regard"

those who endured (ULT)
those who endure suffering for him (UST)

“those who continued obeying God even through hardship”

Translation Words - ULT

• we regard...as blessed
• of the Lord
• he
• merciful
• of Job
• those who endured
• endurance

Translation Words - UST

• God honors and helps
• the Lord God
• Lord
• kind
• Job
• those who endure suffering for him
• You know that although he suffered much

ULT
11 See, we regard those who endured as blessed. You have heard of the endurance of Job, and you know the purpose of the Lord, how he is very compassionate and merciful.

UST
11 We know that God honors and helps those who endure suffering for him. You have also heard about Job. You know that although he suffered much, the Lord God planned to bring good to Job because he endured that suffering. And from that we know that the Lord is very compassionate and kind.
James 5:12

above all...my brothers (ULT)
I want to say something important about how you talk...my brothers and sisters (UST)

“This is important, my brothers:” or “Especially, my brothers,”

my brothers (ULT)
my brothers and sisters (UST)

This refers to all believers including women. Alternate translation: “my fellow believers” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

do not swear (ULT)
You must not take an oath (UST)

To “swear” is to say that you will do something, or that something is true, and to be held accountable by a higher authority. Alternate translation: “do not make an oath” or “do not make a vow”

either by heaven or by the earth (ULT)
by calling on heaven or by calling on the earth to stand as a witness (UST)

The words “heaven” and “earth” refer to the spiritual or human authorities that are in heaven and earth. (See: Metonymy)

let your “Yes” mean “Yes” and your “No” mean “No,”

“do what you say you will do, or say that something is true, without making an oath”

so you do not fall under judgment (ULT)
God will judge you when you say more than that (UST)

Being condemned is spoken of as if one had fallen, crushed by the weight of something heavy. Alternate translation: “so God will not punish you” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- by heaven
- brothers
- judgment
- by the earth
- swear
- oath

Translation Words - UST

- by calling on heaven
- brothers and sisters
- God will judge you
- by calling on the earth to stand as a witness
- You must...take an oath

ULT
12 But above all, my brothers, do not swear, either by heaven or by the earth, or by any other oath. Instead, let your “Yes” mean “Yes” and your “No” mean “No,” so you do not fall under judgment.

UST
12 Also, my brothers and sisters, I want to say something important about how you talk. You must not take an oath by calling on heaven or by calling on the earth to stand as a witness for the promise you make. All you need to say is “Yes” or “No.” God will judge you when you say more than that.
• by calling on the earth to stand as a witness
James 5:13

Is anyone among you suffering hardship? Let him pray (ULT)  
Whoever among you is experiencing trouble should pray that God would help him (UST)

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their need. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “If anyone is enduring troubles, he should pray” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise (ULT)  
Whoever is cheerful should sing songs of praise to God (UST)

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their blessings. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “If anyone is happy, he should sing songs of praise” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
- Let him pray
- suffering hardship

Translation Words - UST
- should pray that God would help him
- is experiencing trouble
James 5:14

Is anyone among you sick? Let him call (ULT)
Whoever among you is sick should call (UST)

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their need. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “If anyone is sick, he should call” (See: Rhetorical Question)

in the name of the Lord (ULT)
with the Lord’s authority, pray (UST)

“Name” is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: “by the authority of the Lord” or “with the authority that the Lord has given them” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Let him call
- Lord
- church
- Let them anoint
- name
- let them pray
- elders
- with oil

Translation Words - UST

- should call
- Lord’s
- congregation
- They should put
- authority, pray
- to come to pray
- leaders
- olive oil
James 5:15

The prayer of faith will heal the sick person (ULT)
The prayer that is offered to God with faith will heal the person who is sick (UST)

The writer speaks of God hearing believers pray for sick people and healing those people as if the prayers themselves healed the people. Alternate translation: “The Lord will hear the prayer of faith and will heal the sick person” (See: Metonymy)

The prayer of faith (ULT)
The prayer that is offered to God with faith (UST)

“The prayer made by believers” or “The prayer that people pray believing God will do as they ask”

the Lord will raise him up (ULT)
the Lord will restore his health (UST)

“the Lord will make him well” or “the Lord will enable him to resume his normal life”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- sins
- God will forgive
- prayer
- faith
- will heal
- he has committed
- will raise...up

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- that person has sinned
- God will forgive
- prayer
- that is offered to God with faith
- will heal
- that person has sinned
- will restore
James 5:16

General Information:

As these were Jewish believers, James reminds them to pray by recalling one of the prophets of old and that prophet’s practical prayers.

So confess...your sins (ULT)
So, because the Lord is able to heal the sick and to forgive sins, tell...the sinful things that you have done (UST)

Admit to other believers things you did wrong so that you can be forgiven.

to one another (ULT)
each other (UST)

“to each other”

so that you may be healed (ULT)
in order that you may be healed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that God may heal you” (See: Active or Passive)

The prayer of a righteous person is very strong in its working (ULT)
If righteous people pray and ask fervently for God to do something, God will act powerfully and will certainly do it (UST)

Prayer is presented as if it were an object that was strong or powerful. Alternate translation: “When the person who obeys God prays, God will do great things” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- of a righteous person
- sins
- confess
- pray
- The prayer
- you may be healed

Translation Words - UST

- If righteous people
- sinful things that you have done
- tell
- pray
- pray and ask fervently for God to do something
- you may be healed
James 5:17

He prayed...earnestly (ULT)
he earnestly prayed (UST)

“prayed eagerly” or “prayed passionately”

three...six (ULT)
three...a half (UST)

“3...6” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• earnestly
• He prayed...earnestly
• Elijah
• months
• land

Translation Words - UST

• he earnestly prayed
• he earnestly prayed
• Although the prophet Elijah
• a half
• for...years

ULT

17 Elijah was a man just like us. He prayed earnestly that it would not rain, and it did not rain in the land for three years and six months.

UST

17 Although the prophet Elijah was an ordinary person like us, he earnestly prayed that it would not rain. And it did not rain for three and a half years.
James 5:18

the heavens gave rain (ULT)
God sent rain (UST)

“The heavens” probably refers to the sky, which is presented as the source of the rain. Alternate translation: “Rain fell from the sky”

the earth produced its fruit (ULT)
produced crops again (UST)

Here the earth is presented as the source of the crops.

fruit (ULT)
crops again (UST)

Here “fruit” stands for all the crops of the farmers. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• heavens
• Elijah prayed
• fruit
• earth

Translation Words - UST

• God
• he prayed...asking God to send rain
• crops again
• produced
James 5:19

**brothers (ULT)**

**brothers and sisters (UST)**

Here this word probably refers to both men and women. Alternate translation: “fellow believers” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

**if anyone among you wanders from the truth, and someone brings him back (ULT)**

**if anyone of you stops obeying the true message from God, some other person among you should persuade that person to once again do what God has told us to do. If he stops doing what is wrong (UST)**

A believer who stops trusting in God and obeying him is spoken of as if he were a sheep that wandered away from the flock. The person who persuades him to trust in God again is spoken of as if he were a shepherd who went to search for the lost sheep. Alternate translation: “whenever anyone stops obeying God, and another person helps him start obeying again” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- brothers
- truth
- brings...back
- wanders

**Translation Words - UST**

- brothers and sisters
- true message
- should persuade...to once again do what God has told us to do. If he stops doing what is wrong
- stops obeying
James 5:20

whoever turns a sinner from his wandering way will save his soul from death, and will cover over a great number of sins (ULT)

of that other person, God will save the sinner from spiritual death and will forgive his many sins (UST)

James means that God will use the actions of this person to persuade the sinner to repent and be saved. But James speaks as if it were this other person who actually saved the sinner's soul from death. (See: Metonymy)

will save his soul from death, and will cover over a great number of sins (ULT)

God will save the sinner...from spiritual death and will forgive his many sins (UST)

Here “death” refers to spiritual death, eternal separation from God. Alternate translation: “will save him from spiritual death, and God will forgive the sinner for all of his sins” (See: Synecdoche)

will cover over a great number of sins (ULT)

will forgive his many sins (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the person who brings back the disobedient brother will have his sins forgiven or 2) the disobedient brother, when he returns to the Lord, will have his sins forgiven. Sins are spoken of as if they were objects that God could cover so that he would not see them, so that he would forgive them. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- will save
- a sinner
- of sins
- soul
- death
- whoever turns
- wandering
- that person should know

Translation Words - UST

- God will save the sinner
- God will save the sinner
- his...sins
- God will save the sinner
- spiritual death
- of that other person
- God will save the sinner
- all of you should remember
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract Nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

Examples from the Bible

...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...from childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial. But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content. But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved... Today God has saved the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

**Description**

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

**Purposes for the passive**

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

**Translation Principles Regarding the Passive**

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

**Examples from the Bible**

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed*, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker’s message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But
it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all assumed knowledge.

An important piece of implicit information here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon because they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was assumed knowledge that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you.

or:

At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

(Go back to: James 1:1; 1:21; 1:24; 1:25; Notes; 2:6; 2:16; 3:1; 4:6; 5:1; 5:3)
Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “un happy,” “im possible,” and “use less.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)
And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)
Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

• In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence No ví a nadie is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
• In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
• In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
• In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

...in order not to be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULT)
This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.
Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or "absolutely."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

- For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)
- “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

...in order not to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)
- “…so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or "absolutely."

- Be sure of this—wicked people will not go un punished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)
- “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished...”

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)
- “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about: [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

(Go back to: James 1:6)
Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)
The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)
This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)
This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare false things to say.”
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- King David was old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

- “King David was very old.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

- ...a lamb without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “...a lamb without any blemish at all...”

(Go back to: James 1:17; 1:21; 1:27; 3:13; 4:1; 4:2; 4:9)
Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor will sinners stand in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, for your comfort,...
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:
But if we are afflicted, we are afflicted for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, we are comforted for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, I want you to heal me so that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus...Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...May you receive grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me” that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

(Go back to: James 1:10; 1:23; 3:12)
Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

- Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)
- When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah”. The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

- Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word “Ah” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

- Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, “Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as “how” or “why”, even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God’s judgments are.

- How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

- You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are”.
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are”.

- You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)
“You are such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God are so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” (Mark 7:36 ULT)

“They were absolutely astonished, saying, ‘Wow! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.’”

Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Oh no, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, what will happen to me? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

Help, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

“His judgments are so unsearchable and his ways are far beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, “Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. He was terrified and said, “Ah, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

(Go back to: James 4:9)
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

…the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)
When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

(Next we recommend you learn about: When Masculine Words Include Women

(Go back to: James 3:1)
Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The singular form refers to one person, and the plural form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the formal form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the informal form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: James 2:6; 2:8; 2:11; 4:7; 4:8)
Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is the man who goes into his neighbor’s wife; the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples from the Bible

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
“Yahweh gives favor to the good man, but he condemns the man who makes evil plans.”
(Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain.  (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse a man who refuses to sell them grain”

(3) Use the word “any, as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain.  (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse any man who refuses to sell them grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain.  (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse men who refuse to sell them grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain.  (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse whoever refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:
When Masculine Words Include Women

(Go back to: James 3:1; 5:6)
How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
• Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
• Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
• Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

   You went over the Jordan
   and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

   You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the *city of Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*

   Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

   Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

   She named him Moses
   and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

   She named him *Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')*, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

   ...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named Paul ¹

The footnote would look like:

[¹] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named Saul

The footnote would look like:

[¹] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that Paul ¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:
Next we recommend you learn about:

[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]

(\textbf{Go back to: Introduction to James})
Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses exaggeration. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, “Everyone is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, “Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies.” (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means “most.”
Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.

(1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

or:

Many of the country of Judea and many of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Almost all the country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: James 4:2)
Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining…;” “What if the sun stopped shining…;” “Suppose the sun stopped shining…;” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

• If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
• If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
• If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

• I wish he had come.
• I wish he were here.
• I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

• If only he had come.
• If only he were here.
• If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

• Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
• Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.
Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, *if you had been here, my brother would not have died.*” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

**Hypothetical situations in the present**

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. *If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.* (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?*” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

**Hypothetical situation in the future**

*Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved;* but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

**Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation**

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, *‘If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.’* (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

**Translation Strategies**

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
• that something could be true now, but is not.
• that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
• that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
• that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: James 2:2; 2:18)
**Idiom**

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

**Description**

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

- he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

- I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

- Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

**Examples from the Bible**

- Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

- the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

| the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULT) |

This means, “the one who helps me.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

| Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone. “ (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT) |

...Look, we all belong to the same nation.

He resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

| He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it. |

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

| I am not worthy that you should enter my house. |

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

| Let these words go deeply into your ears |

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

| Be all ears when I say these words to you. |

“My eyes grow dim from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

| I am crying my eyes out |

(Go back to: James 1:19; 4:13)
Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Exclusive

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)
In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

(Go back to: James 2:1; 3:2)
**Metaphor**

**Description**

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

**The Parts of a Metaphor**

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love”. This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both **beautiful**. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

**Passive Metaphors**

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

**Active Metaphors**

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, "Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central **Idea** of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

Listen to this word, *you cows of Bashan*, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the **Topic**) as if they were cows (the **Image**). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

**NOTE:** Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The **Topic(s)** are “we” and “you,” and the **Image(s)** are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The **Idea** being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that *neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.*
Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

**Translation Strategies**

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See **Simile**.
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see **Translate Unknowns** for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

> It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

   And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay
   . You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

   And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

   Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad
   . (Acts 26:14 ULT)

   Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.

(5) If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

   And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay
   . You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

   “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
   “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

   Yahweh lives; may my rock
   be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

   Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

   Yahweh lives; may my rock
   be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

   Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become fishers of men.

(Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men.**

Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people.**

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

- and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)
  
  The blood represents Christ’s death.

- He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)
  
  The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

- The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)
  
  A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

- Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)
  
  The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

- ...who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)
  
  The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

“He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

“The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David.”

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

“who warned you to flee from God’s coming punishment?”

To learn about some common metonyms, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonyms.

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...*The rich man* had huge numbers of flocks and herds... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

*He will not be rich*; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...*the rich* must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

- The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

- Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

*The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)
The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

Blessed are people who are meek...

(Go back to: James 2:5; 2:6; 4:6)
Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

| Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT) |

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

| That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT) |

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

| When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT) |

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

| Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT) |

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language’s words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The unfoldingWord® Literal Text (ULT) and the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)
Next we recommend you learn about:

- [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal]]
- [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

*(Go back to: James 5:17)*
Parallelism

Description

In parallelism two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles’ letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

• It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
• It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
• It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God’s word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.
I lift up my voice to Yahweh, and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) **The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

**Translation Strategies**

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

   **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
   
   “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

   **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
   
   “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

   **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
   
   “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

   **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
   
   “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

```
you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)
   “All you have done is lie to me.”
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
   “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”
```

(Go back to: James 4:8; 4:9)
Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

- Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

- sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

- Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches
at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...sin is at your door, *waiting to attack you*

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, *just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person*.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...even the winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even *controls the winds and the sea*.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

**Next we recommend you learn about:**

[rc://en/tl/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]
[rc://en/tl/man/translate/bita-part1]

(Go back to: James 1:4; 1:14; 1:15; 2:9; 2:13; 4:1; 4:4; 5:3; 5:4)
Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying, “Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said “the Lord came.”

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

For to us a child has been born

, to us a son has been given; (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

“For to us a child will be born, to us a son will be given;
(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I am about to hand over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I am handing over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(Go back to: James 5:2; 5:3)
Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, “Is this how you insult God’s high priest?” (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God’s high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

- Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)
  Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man’s property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man’s property.

- Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
  God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

- Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)
  Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.
And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, “Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?” If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? *None of you would do that!*

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... *(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)*

*This is what the kingdom of God is like.* It is like a mustard seed...

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

*(Acts 23:4 ULT)*

*You should not insult God's high priest!*

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

*(Job 3:11 ULT)*

*I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!*

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

*(Luke 1:43 ULT)*

*How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!*

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? *(1 Kings 21:7 ULT)*

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, *do you not?*

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

*Or what man among you is there who*

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? *(Matthew 7:9 ULT)*

*If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?*

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

*What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?* Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! *(Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)*

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

• A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
• A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
• Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• People may not know how the two items are similar.
• People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.
Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

   See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

   See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

(Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

   For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

   See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

   See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

( Matthew 23:37 ULT) - If people do not know what a hen is or how a hen gathers her chickens, you could use another animal.

   See, I send you out as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

( Matthew 17:20)

   If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

   See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

( Matthew 10:16 ULT)
See, I send you out among people who will want to harm you.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

(Go back to: James 1:6; 1:10; 1:11; 1:17; 1:18; 1:23; 1:24; 1:25; 5:3)
Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

death Phalisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?" (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)

"I exalt the Lord,"

...the Phalisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Phalisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands
Next we recommend you learn about:

Metonymy
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

(Go back to: James 1:1; 1:21; 3:2; 5:20)
Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

10 See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. 11 [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then every man went to his own house.... 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”] [2]

[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.
14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 
15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. 
   It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.”

[1] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 
15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what 
   comes out of the person that defiles him.”

[1] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 
15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what 
   comes out of the person that defiles him. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.”

[1] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original]]
Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

**Description**

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

**Translation Principles**

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

**Examples from the Bible**

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)
People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

**Translation Strategies**

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves

(Matthew 7:15 ULT)

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

> your sins...will be white like milk your sins...will be white like the moon

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.

**We have here only five loaves of bread**
and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

to him who made great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

to him who made the sun and the moon

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

How to Translate Names

(Go back to: James 3:7)
When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

**Description**

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

> A wise child makes his father rejoice but a foolish child brings grief to his mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

**Reason this is a translation issue**

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

**Translation Principles**

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

**Examples from the Bible**

> We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but men and women.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of men and women.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, ‘If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and have a child for his brother.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)
Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise man
dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)

“The wise person dies just like the fool dies.”

Wise people die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers

, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”

(Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

“If people want to follow me, they must deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: James 4:11; 5:12; 5:19)
Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **05:04** Then God changed Abram’s name to Abraham, which means “father of many.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: James 2:21; 2:23)
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: euphemism)

(See also: commit, covenant, sexual immorality, sleep with, faithful)

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:06 “Do not commit adultery.”
- 28:02 Do not commit adultery.
- 34:07 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

(Go back to: James 2:11; 4:4)
adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

• Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
• When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
• In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
• The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 05:14
• Isaiah 09:11
• Job 06:23
• Lamentations 04:12
• Luke 12:59
• Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: James 4:4)
altar

Definition:
An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 03:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- 05:08 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar.
- 13:09 A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar.  
- 16:06 He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the altar to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:
- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: James 2:21)
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3975, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: James 2:21)
anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 5:14)
appoint, appointed

Definition:
The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 3:6; 4:4)
arrogant, arrogance

Definition:
The term “arrogant” means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- Being arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: acknowledge, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:18
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Ezekiel 16:49
- Proverbs 16:05
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1346, H1347, H2102, H2103, H6277, G212, G5450

(Go back to: James 4:16)
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

• In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
• Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

• In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

• Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
• When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
• The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
• A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 08:14
• Acts 07:38
• Ezra 10:12-13
• Hebrews 12:22-24
• Leviticus 04:20-21
• Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

• Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: James 2:2)
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God's will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God's will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105, G5351

(Go back to: James 1:16; 5:19)
beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 3:7)
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe
   - To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
   - To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in
   - To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
   - When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
   - The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
   - To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.
   - The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
   - The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.
   - In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
   - A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)
Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:04 Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not believe him.
- 04:08 Abram believed God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed God's promise.
- 11:02 God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who believed in him.
- 11:06 But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands.
- 37:05 Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”
- 43:01 After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The believers there constantly gathered together to pray.
- 43:03 While the believers were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the believers.
- 43:13 Every day, more people became believers.
- 46:06 That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 46:01 Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- 46:09 Some believers who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus€¦ It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- 47:14 They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the believers in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: James 2:19; 2:23)
beloved

Definition:
The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: James 1:16; 1:19; 2:5)
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 074:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

(Go back to: James 2:7)
bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:07 God saw that it was good and he blessed them.
- 01:15 God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He blessed them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- 01:16 So God rested from all he had been doing. He blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 04:04 “I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”
- 04:07 Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram.”
- 07:03 Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau.
• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

*(Go back to: James 1:12; 1:25; 3:9; 3:10; 5:11)*
boast, boastful

Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- James 03:14
- James 04:15-17
- Psalms 044:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1740, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

(Go back to: James 1:9; 3:5; 3:14; 4:16)
body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(Go back to: James 2:16; 2:26; 3:2; 3:3; 3:6)
**brother**

**Definition:**

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: James 1:2; 1:9; 1:16; 1:19; 2:1; 2:5; 2:14; 2:15; 3:1; 3:10; 3:12; 4:11; 5:7; 5:9; 5:10; 5:12; 5:19)
call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14
Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:7; 2:23; 5:14)
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “ elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: James 2:5; 4:4)
Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God's Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:07 The Messiah was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- 17:08 As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost 1,000 years.
- 21:01 From the very beginning, God planned to send the Messiah.
- 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own descendants.
- 21:05 The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
- 21:06 God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 43:07 “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'”
• **43:09** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
• **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
• **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the Messiah.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: James 1:1; 2:1)
church, Church

Definition:
In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, believe, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **46:10** So the church in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The Church has been growing.
Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

(Go back to: James 5:14)
clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to the action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God's eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29
Colossians 03:05
1 Thessalonians 04:07
James 04:08

Word Data:


(Back to: James 4:8)
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(Go back to: James 2:2; 5:2)
commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

• A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
• To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
• The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
• The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
• The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, faithful, promise, sin)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 28:07
• 1 Peter 02:21-23
• Jeremiah 02:12-13
• Matthew 13:41
• Psalm 058:02

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 5:15)
compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “deep caring” or “pity” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

(Go back to: James 5:11)
condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:
The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(Go back to: James 5:6; 5:9)
confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: James 5:16)
create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

• When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
• When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
• Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
• The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

• Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
• The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
• A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
• To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
• The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
• Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
• The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
• Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
• 1 Peter 04:17-19
• Colossians 01:15
• Galatians 06:15
• Genesis 01:01
• Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(See also: James 1:18)
crown, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Paul calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: glory, king, olive)

Bible References:

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

(Go back to: James 1:12)
cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call, plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 4:9; 5:1; 5:4)
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to heal him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would heal sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not heal any of them. He only healed the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus healed them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had healed many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be healed, too!”
- **44:03** Immediately, God healed the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:02** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:
The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:09 God said to the snake, “You are cursed!”
- 02:11 “Now the ground is cursed, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- 04:04 “I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you.”
- 39:07 Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God curse me if I know this man!”
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 3:9; 3:10)
Definition:
The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: James 5:3; 5:5)
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:22; 1:26; 5:20)
defile, defiled

Definition:
The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: clean, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435

(See back to: James 3:6)
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these “fallen angels.”
- Sometimes these demons are called “unclean spirits.” The term “unclean” means “impure” or “evil” or “unholy.”
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “demon” could also be translated as “evil spirit.”
- The term “unclean spirit” could also be translated as “impure spirit” or “corrupt spirit” or “evil spirit.”
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term “demon” is translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: demon-possessed, Satan, false god, false god, angel, evil, clean)

Bible References:

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 26:09 Many people who had demons in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the demons came out of the people, and often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”
- 32:08 The demons came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- 47:05 Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the demon that was in her, “In the name of Jesus, come out of her.” Right away the demon left her.
- 49:02 He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

(Go back to: James 2:19)
die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:
The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death
   • To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
   • The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death
   • Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
   • This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
   • This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:
   • To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
   • In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
   • Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
   • In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
   • In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
   • The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
   • The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:
   • 1 Corinthians 15:21
   • 1 Thessalonians 04:17
   • Acts 10:42
   • Acts 14:19
   • Colossians 02:15
   • Colossians 02:20
   • Genesis 02:15-17
   • Genesis 34:27
   • Matthew 16:28
   • Romans 05:10
   • Romans 05:12
   • Romans 06:10
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:15; 2:17; 2:20; 2:26; 3:8; Notes: 5:6; 5:20)
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: believe, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:01
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 018:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G1287, G1290, G4650

(See also: believe, persecute)

(See also: believe, persecute)
earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: spirit, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 3:15; 5:5; 5:7; 5:12; 5:17; 5:18)
elder, older, old

Definition:
The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

• The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
• In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
• In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
• In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
• This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
• 1 Timothy 03:1-3
• 1 Timothy 04:14
• Acts 05:19-21
• Acts 14:23
• Mark 11:28
• Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: James 5:14)
Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

• God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
• Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
• He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
• At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
• Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: miracle, prophet, Yahweh)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 17:1
• 2 Kings 01:3-4
• James 05:16-18
• John 01:19-21
• John 01:24-25
• Mark 09:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 19:02 Elijah was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
• 19:02 Elijah said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
• 19:03 God told Elijah to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
• 19:04 But they took care of Elijah, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
• 19:05 After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
• 19:07 Then Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.”
• 19:12 Then Elijah said, “Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!”
• 36:03 Then Moses and the prophet Elijah appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H452, G2243

(Go back to: James 5:17)
endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H386, H3201, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

(Go back to: James 1:3; 1:4; 1:12; 5:11)
envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: James 4:2; 4:5)
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:
The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as “David's descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: James 5 General Notes)
evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 03:01 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
- 04:02 God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:02 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:01 But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
- 29:08 The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:02 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:13; 1:21; 2:4; 3:8; 3:16; 4:16)
exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:
To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:
- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: James 1:9; 4:10)
face, facial

Definition:
The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: James 1:11; 1:23)
faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 05:06 When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- 31:07 Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little faith, why did you doubt?”
- 32:16 Jesus said to her, “Your faith has healed you. Go in peace.”
- 38:09 Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:
The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

• Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
• The expression “find favor with someone” means that someone is approved of by that person.
• When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
• A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
• The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

• Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include "approval" or “blessing” or “benefit.”
• The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
• The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 02:25-26
• 2 Chronicles 19:07
• 2 Corinthians 01:11
• Acts 24:27
• Genesis 41:16
• Genesis 47:25
• Genesis 50:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:9)
fig

Definition:
A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:
- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:
- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

(Go back to: James 3:12)
**fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot**

**Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

**Word Data:**


(See also: James 3:5; 3:6; 5:3)
firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family.
  That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

(Go back to: James 1:18)
**flesh**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of an animal's body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: James 5:3)
fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

• In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
• In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
• The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
• The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
• Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

• Ecclesiastes 01:17
• Ephesians 05:15
• Galatians 03:03
• Genesis 31:28
• Matthew 07:26
• Matthew 25:08
• Proverbs 13:16
• Psalms 049:13

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:20)
footstool

Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
- To “worship at God's footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God's “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

( Go back to: James 2:3 )
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

• Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
• This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
• When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
• Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

• This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
• In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
• Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
• The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
• If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

• Genesis 50:17
• Numbers 14:17-19
• Deuteronomy 29:20-21
• Joshua 24:19-20
• 2 Kings 05:17-19
• Psalms 025:11
• Psalms 025:17-19
• Isaiah 55:6-7
• Isaiah 40:02
• Luke 05:21
• Acts 08:22
• Ephesians 04:31-32
• Colossians 03:12-14
• 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 07:10 But Esau had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
• 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would forgive the people. God listened to Moses and forgave them.
• 17:13 David repented of his sin and God forgave him.
• 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
• **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”

• **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.

• **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

**Word Data:**

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

*(Go back to: James 5:15)*
**fountain, source, spring**

**Definition:**

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:17
- Genesis 07:11
- Genesis 08:02
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 03:11

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: James 3:11)*
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:25; 2:12)
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:
The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces—“that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vines fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17
Word Data:

• Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: James 3:17; 3:18; 5:7; 5:18)
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:04 John fulfilled what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- 40:03 The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they fulfilled a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- 42:07 Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be fulfilled.”
- 43:05 “This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- 43:07 “This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- 44:05 “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: James 2:23)
**gift**

**Definition:**

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return.

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: spirit, Holy Spirit)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08
- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

(Go back to: James 1:17)
glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:
The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament
- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:
- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s glory if you believe in me?”

Word Data:


(Go back to: *James 2:1*)
God

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
  NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** God created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15** God made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** “I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you.”
- **09:14** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the Most High God who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!”
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **28:01** “There is only one who is good, and that is God.”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **50:16** But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:


God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 40:07 Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:08 “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of God the Father.”
- 50:10 “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, G3962
(Go back to: James 1:17; 1:27; 3:9)
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God.”

(See also evil, honor, obey, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:09
- Acts 03:12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:18
- Jude 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

(Go back to: James 4 General Notes)
gold, golden

Definition:
Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling.
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:
- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:
- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: James 2:2; 5:3)
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:04 God saw that what he had created was good.
- 01:11 God plantedâ€¦ the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.”
- 01:12 Then God said, “It is not good for man to be alone.”
- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
28:01 “Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good’? There is only one who is good, and that is God.”

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: James 1:17; 2:3; 2:7; 3:13; 3:17; 4:17)*
grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God's favor” or “God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: James 4:6)
guilt, guilty

Definition:
The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, sin)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 39:02 They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was guilty of anything.
- 39:11 After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no guilt in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not guilty.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not guilty!”
- 40:04 Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don't you fear God? We are guilty, but this man is innocent.
- 49:10 Because of your sin, you are guilty and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

( 继续到: James 2:10)
hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:


296 / 445
(Go back to: James 4:8)
harvest, reap

Definition:
The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:
- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(Go back to: James 5:4)
heart

Definition:
The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


(See also: hard)

(Go back to: James 1:26; 3:14; 4:8; 5:5; 5:8)
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:02 They even began building a tall tower to reach heaven.
- 14:11 He (God) gave them bread from heaven, called “manna.”
- 23:07 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 42:11 Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: James 5:12; 5:18)
heir

Definition:

An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

• In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
• The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
• As God’s children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
• The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit)

Bible References:

• Galatians 04:1-2
• Galatians 04:07
• Genesis 15:01
• Genesis 21:10-11
• Luke 20:14
• Mark 12:07
• Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

(Go back to: James 2:5)
hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus’ sacrifice. It is also referred to as the “lake of fire.”

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus’ sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use “lake” in the phrase “lake of fire” because it refers to water.
- The term “hell” could be translated as “place of suffering” or “final place of darkness and pain.”
- The term “lake of fire” could also be translated as, “sea of fire” or “huge fire (of suffering)” or “field of fire.”

(See also: heaven, death, Hades, abyss)

Bible References:

- James 03:06
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 50:14 He (God) will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- 50:15 He will throw Satan into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7585, G86, G439, G440, G1067, G3041, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G5020, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: James 3:6)
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:01 But God's Spirit was there over the water.
- 24:08 When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, the Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- 26:03 Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:03 They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and they began to speak in other languages.
- 43:08 “And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit just as he promised he would do. The Holy Spirit is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing.”
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the Holy Spirit.”
- 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: James 4:5)
horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, , donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: James 3:3)
humble, humbled, humility

Definition:
The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

• To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
• When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
• Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
• Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
• The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don't be prideful.”
• “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

• James 01:21
• James 03:13
• James 04:10
• Luke 14:11
• Luke 18:14
• Matthew 18:04
• Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
• 34:10 “God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: James 1:10; 1:21; 3:13; 4:6; 4:10)
**iniquity**

**Definition:**

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: James 3:6)
Isaac

Facts:
Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, fulfill, Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 05:04 “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him Isaac.”
- 05:06 When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- 05:09 God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of Isaac.
- 06:01 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- 06:05 Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 07:10 Then Isaac died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G2464

(Go back to: James 2:21)
James (brother of Jesus)

Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

- Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
- During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
- Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
- The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, Christ, church, Judas the son of James, persecute)

Bible References:

- Galatians 01:18-20
- Galatians 02:9-10
- James 01:1-3
- Jude 01:1-2
- Mark 09:1-3
- Matthew 13:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: James 1:1)
jealous, jealousy

Definition:
The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 05:09
- Exodus 20:05
- Ezekiel 36:05
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

(Go back to: James 3:14; 3:16)
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name “Jesus” means “Yahweh saves.” The term “Christ” is a title that means “anointed one” and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as “Jesus Christ” or “Christ Jesus.” These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him “Jesus” because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages “Jesus” and “Christ” are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, “Jesucristo,” “Jezus Christus,” “Yesus Kristus”, and “Hesukristo” are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term “Christ,” some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term “Messiah” throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:04 The angel said, “You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah.”
- 23:02 “Name him Jesus (which means, ‘Yahweh saves’), because he will save the people from their sins.”
- 24:07 So John baptized him (Jesus), even though Jesus had never sinned.
- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
• 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
• 26:08 Then Jesus went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus healed them.
• 31:03 Then Jesus finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
• 38:02 He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
• 40:08 Through his death, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
• 42:11 Then Jesus was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. Jesus sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
• 50:17 Jesus and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

• Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: James 1:1; 2:1)
Job

Facts:
Job was a man who is described in the Bible as blameless and righteous before God. He is best known for persevering in his faith in God through times of terrible suffering.

- Job lived in the land of Uz, which was located somewhere east of the land of Canaan, possibly near the region of the Edomites.
- It is thought that he lived during the time of Esau and Jacob because one of Job's friends was a "Temanite," which was a people group named after Esau's grandson.
- The Old Testament book of Job tells about how Job and others responded to his suffering. It also gives God's viewpoint as the sovereign creator and ruler of the universe.
- After all the disasters, God eventually healed Job and gave him more children and wealth.
- The book of Job says that he was very old when he died.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Esau, flood, JacobNoah, people group)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- James 05:9-11
- Job 01:01
- Job 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H347, G2492

(Go back to: James 5:11)
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy.”
- **34:04** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with joy, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great joy. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:2; 4:9)
judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: governor, judge, law)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:08
- Acts 07:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Matthew 05:25
- Ruth 01:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:4; 4:11; 4:12; 5:9)
judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 21:08 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.
- 39:04 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- 50:14 But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.
Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:4; 2:12; 2:13; 3:1; 4:11; 4:12; 5:12)
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.”
  (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Introduction to James; James 2 General Notes; 2:21; 2:24; 2:25)
kind [NOT kindness]

Definition:
The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

(Go back to: James 3:7)
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God's rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God's rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God's rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven's reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God').”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:02 He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- 28:06 Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”
- 29:02 Jesus said, “The kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- 34:01 Jesus told many other stories about the kingdom of God. For example, he said, “The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- 34:03 Jesus told another story, “The kingdom of God is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”
• 34:04 “The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again.”

• 34:05 “The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value.”

• 42:09 He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.

• 49:05 Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.

• 50:02 When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

**Word Data:**

• Strong’s: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: James 2:5)
**know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish**

**Definition:**

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

**Word Data:**


(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)
labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:
The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:20; 2:9; 5:4)
last day, latter days

Definition:
The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: day of the Lord, judge, turn, world)

Bible References:
- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:02
- Isaiah 02:02
- James 05:03
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

(Go back to: James 5:3)
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God's law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God's laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God's laws” could include “laws from God” or “God's commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God's instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh's laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God's laws.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:01** Jesus answered, “What is written in God's law?”
Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good?’ There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: James 2:10; 2:11; 4:11)
**law, principle**

**Definition:**

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)
life, live, living, alive

Definition:
The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life
   • A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
   • Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
   • It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
   • The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
   • In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life
   • A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
   • The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:
   • Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
   • The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
   • The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
   • The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
   • The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
   • When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
   • Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:
   • 2 Peter 01:03
   • Acts 10:42
   • Genesis 02:07
   • Genesis 07:22
   • Hebrews 10:20
   • Jeremiah 44:02
   • John 01:04
   • Judges 02:18
   • Luke 12:23
   • Matthew 07:14
Examples from the Bible stories:

• 01:10 So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed life into him.
• 03:01 After a long time, many people were living in the world.
• 08:13 When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.
• 17:09 However, toward the end of his [David's] life he sinned terribly before God.
• 27:01 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
• 35:05 Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life.”
• 44:05 “You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead.”

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: James 1:12; 4:14; 4:15)
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

**Definition:**

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: James 1:17)
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'”
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'”
- **26:03** This is the year of the Lord's favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, “Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **43:09** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: James 1:1; 1:7; 2:1; 3:9; 4:10; 4:15; 5:7; 5:8; 5:10; 5:11; 5:14; 5:15)
love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
   • Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   • When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   • In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
   • This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   • The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

• Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
• Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
• Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
• In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
• Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
• Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 13:07
• 1 John 03:02
• 1 Thessalonians 04:10
• Galatians 05:23
• Genesis 29:18
• Isaiah 56:06
• Jeremiah 02:02
• John 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:12; 2:5; 2:8)
lowly, lowliness

Definition:

The terms “lowly” and “lowliness” refer to being poor or having low status. Being lowly can also have the meaning of being humble.

- Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
- His birth was lowly because he was born in a place where animals were kept, not in a palace.
- Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
- Ways to translate “lowly” could include “humble” or “of low status” or “unimportant.”
- The word “lowliness” could also be translated as “humility” or “little importance.”

(See also: humble, proud)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:19
- Ezekiel 17:14
- Luke 01:48-49
- Romans 12:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6041, H6819, H8217, G5011, G5012, G5014

(Go back to: James 1:9)
lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:14; 1:15; 4:1; 4:2)
member, body parts

Definition:

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: body, Pharisee, council)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G1010, G3196, G3609

(Go back to: James 3:5; 3:6; 4:1)
mercy, merciful

Definition:
The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and mercy to others.
- 19:17 He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- 20:12 The Persian Empire was strong but merciful to the people it conquered.
- 27:11 Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was merciful to him.”
- 32:11 But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had mercy on you.”
- 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.’”
Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:13; 3:17)
messenger

Facts:
The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: James 2:25)
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: James 1:8; 4:8)
month, monthly

Definition:
The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:
- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

(Go back to: James 5:17)
mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:
The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 4:9)
name

Definition:
The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: James 2:7; 5:10; 5:14)
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

(Go back to: James 2:8; 4:12)
oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:
The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)
obey, obedient

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal.

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah *obeyed* God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham *obeyed* God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** “Because you (Abraham) have _obeyed_ me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or *obey* his commands.
- **13:07** If the people *obeyed* these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: James 2:10; 3:3)
oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Old back to: James 5:14)
olive

Definition:
The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

• Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
• The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
• Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
• In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:
• 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
• Deuteronomy 06:10-12
• Exodus 23:10-11
• Genesis 08:11
• James 03:12
• Luke 16:06
• Psalms 052:08

Word Data:
• Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: James 3:12)
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:6)
**partial, partiality**

**Definition:**

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

(Go back to: James 2:1)
patient, patience, impatient

Definition:
The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(Go back to: James 5:7; 5:8; 5:10)
peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:06 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- 15:12 Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- 16:03 Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- 21:13 He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace, forever.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: James 2:16; 3:17; 3:18)
perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

(Go back to: James 1:4; 1:17; 1:25; 2:22; 3:2)
perish

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or “cease to exist.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(See also: James 1:11; 4:12)
**plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow**

**Definition:**

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

**Translations Suggestions**

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person's good actions will bring a good result and a person's evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: evil, good, harvest)

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 06:08
- Luke 08:05
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:04
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

(Go back to: James 3:18)
**possess, possessed, possession, dispossess**

**Facts:**

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

**Word Data:**


(See also: Canaan, worship)

(See also: Canaan, worship)
**power, powerful, powerfully**

**Definition:**

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”
Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:21; 2:14; 3:2; 3:8; 4:12)
pray, prayer

Definition:
The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 06:05 Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 13:12 But Moses prayed for them, and God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.
- 19:08 Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- 21:07 Priests also prayed to God for the people.
- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and prayed with each other.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18)
profit, profitable, unprofitable

**Definition:**

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: worthy)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

**Bible References:**

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

(Go back to: James 2:14; 2:16; 4:13)
promise, promised

Definition:
When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:
- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 03:15 God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."
- 03:16 God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.
- 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's promise.
- 05:04 "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- 08:15 The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- 17:14 Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his promises.
- 50:01 Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

Word Data:
- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: James 1:12; 2:5)
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:
A “prophet” is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God's spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God's messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God's messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God's message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- 19:01 Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them prophets. The prophets heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- 19:06 All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
• **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them.

• **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.

• **43:05** “This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”

• **43:07** “This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

• **48:12** Moses was a great prophet who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.

**Word Data:**

• Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: James 5:10)
prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:
The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshipping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

(Go back to: James 2:25)
proud, pride, prideful

Definition:
The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:02 They were very proud, and they did not care about what God said.
- 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 4:6)
pure, purify, purification

Definition:
To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

Word Data:

(Go back to: James 1:27; 3:17; 4:8)
Rahab

Facts:
Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family came to live with the Israelites after the Israelites destroyed Jericho and spared Rahab and her family.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jericho, prostitute)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 02:25
- Joshua 02:21
- Joshua 06:17-19
- Matthew 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:01 In that city there lived a prostitute named Rahab who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect Rahab and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- 15:05 The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. Rahab and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G4460

(Go back to: James 2:25)
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

**Definition:**

**raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

**rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 21:14 The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
41:05 “Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would!”

43:07 “Although Jesus died, God raised him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’ We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

44:05 “You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead.”

44:08 Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

48:04 This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.

49:02 He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

49:12 You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 5:15)
rebuke

Definition:
The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

• The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
• The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
• A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
• This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
• The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
• "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

• Mark 01:23-26
• Mark 16:14
• Matthew 08:26-27
• Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:9)
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:
The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 45:05 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- 49:06 He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- 49:10 When Jesus died on the cross, he received your punishment.
- 49:13 God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562
**Definition:**

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: James 1 General Notes; 5:4)
**righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness**

**Definition:**

The term “righteousness” refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God's “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God's laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)
Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man, living among wicked people.
- 04:08 God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed in God's promise.
- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 23:01 Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man.
- 50:10 Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:20; Notes; 2:23; 3:18; 5:6; 5:16)
royal, royalty, king's, queen's

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

• Examples of things that could be called “royal” include a king’s (or queen's) position, clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
• A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
• A king wore special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
• In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
• The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: king, palace, priest, purple, queen, robe)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 10:13
• 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
• Amos 07:13
• Genesis 49:19-21

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H643, H1921, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G933, G934, G937

(Go back to: James 2:8)
Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:
Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God’s enemy. The devil is also called “Satan” and “the evil one.”
  • The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
  • Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
  • God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan’s control.
  • The name “Satan” means “adversary” or “enemy.”
  • The word “devil” means “accuser.”

Translation Suggestions:
  • The word “devil” could also be translated as “the accuser” or “the evil one” or “the king of evil spirits” or “the chief evil spirit.”
  • “Satan” could be translated as “Opponent” or “Adversary” or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
  • These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
  • Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(Bible References:
  1 John 03:08
  1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
  1 Timothy 05:15
  Acts 13:10
  Job 01:08
  Mark 08:33
  Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:
  21:01 The snake who deceived Eve was Satan. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat Satan completely.
  25:06 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
  25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan’s temptations, so Satan left him.
  33:06 So Jesus explained, “The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God’s word, but does not understand it, and the devil takes the word from him.”
  38:07 After Judas took the bread, Satan entered into him.
  48:04 God promised that one of Eve’s descendants would crush Satan’s head, and Satan would wound his heel. This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
  49:15 God has taken you out of Satan’s kingdom of darkness and put you into God’s kingdom of light.
  50:09 “The weeds represent the people who belong to the evil one. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the devil.”
• 50:10 “When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the devil and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering.”

• 50:15 When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy Satan and his kingdom. He will throw Satan into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: James 3:15; 4:7)
save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm's way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God's rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:21; 2:14; 4:12; Notes; 5:20)
**send, sent, send out**

**Definition:**

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause...to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term "send" is also used in expressions such as to "send word" or to "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: James 2:25)
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term “serve” generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a “servant:” a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a “servant” and a “slave” than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The slave traders sold Joseph as a slave to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** “I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”
- **29:03** “Since the servant could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as slaves to make payment on his debt.’”
- **35:06** “All my father’s servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **47:04** The slave girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **50:04** Jesus also said, “A servant is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

(Go back to: James 1:1)
shadow, overshadow, shade

Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: darkness, light)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

(Go back to: James 1:17)
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8
• Psalms 006:8-10
• Psalms 123:03
• 1 Timothy 05:7-8
• 1 Timothy 06:13-14
• Jeremiah 15:15-16
• Job 16:9-10
• Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:5)
silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: James 5:3)
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:
The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

• Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
• Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called “sinful.”
• Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
• A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
• Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
• The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
• To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
• Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
• Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
• The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
• Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
• Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
• The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
• 1 John 01:10
• 1 John 02:02
• 2 Samuel 07:12-14
• Acts 03:19
• Daniel 09:24
• Genesis 04:07
• Hebrews 12:02
• Isaiah 53:11
• Jeremiah 18:23
• Leviticus 04:14
• Luke 15:18
• Matthew 12:31
• Romans 06:23
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children.”
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**.”
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:15; 2:9; 4:8; 4:17; Notes; 5:15; 5:16; 5:20)
sister

Definition:
A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person’s sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, “sister” is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase “brothers and sisters” is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, “sister” refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:
- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include “sister in Christ” or “spiritual sister” or “woman who believes in Jesus” or “fellow woman believer.”
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for “believer,” this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of “loved one” or “dear one.”

(See also: brother in Christ, spirit)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H269, H1323, G27, G79

(Go back to: James 2:15)
slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 5:5)
soldier, warrior

Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: courage, crucify, Rome, tomb)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:05
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 03:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 08:8-10

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 4:1; 4:2)
son

Definition:
The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

• In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
• Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:
• In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
• When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
• Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:
• 1 Chronicles 18:15
• 1 Kings 13:02
• 1 Thessalonians 05:05
• Galatians 04:07
• Hosea 11:01
• Isaiah 09:06
• Matthew 03:17
• Matthew 05:09
• Matthew 08:12
• Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
• 04:09 God said, “I will give you a son from your own body.”
• 05:05 About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
• 05:08 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me.”
• 09:07 When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
• 11:06 God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn sons.
• 18:01 After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
• 26:04 “Is this the son of Joseph?â€” they said.
Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:21)
soul, self

Definition:
The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means, "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: James 1:21; 5:20)
spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: James 2:26)
strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:
The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

(Go back to: James 5:8)
stumble, reeling

Definition:
The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: believe, persecute, sin, stumbling block)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

(Go back to: James 2:10; 3:2)
submit, submission, in submission

Definition:
To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions:
- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: subject)

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 03:01
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H3584, G5226, G5293

(Go back to: James 4:7)
suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 09:13 God said, “I have seen the suffering of my people.”
- 38:12 Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of suffering.”
- 42:03 He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would suffer and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- 42:07 He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would suffer, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- 44:05 “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”
- 46:04 God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must suffer for my sake.”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


(Go back to: James 5:13)
teacher, Teacher

Definition:
A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: disciple, preach)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 27:01 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- 28:01 One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- 37:02 After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But Teacher,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- 38:14 Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, Teacher,” and kissed him.
- 49:03 Jesus was also a great teacher, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: James 3:1)
tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, Satan, sin, test)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:01 Then Satan came to Jesus and tempted him to sin.
- 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

(Go back to: James 1:13; 1:14)
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: James 1:3)
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:
When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more witnesses. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: James 5:3)
tongue, language

Definition:
The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: James 1:26; 3:5; 3:6; 3:8)
transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word "trespass," but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

(Go back to: James 2:9; 2:11)
tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 2:19)
**trial, proving**

*Definition:*

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is “a testing” or “a temptation” is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, test, innocent, guilt)

*Bible References:*

- Deuteronomy 04:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 03:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

*Word Data:*

- Strong’s: H974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G178, G1383, G2919, G3986

(Go back to: James 1:12)
tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: James 1:1)
tribulation, distresses, trouble

Definition:
The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

• It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
• “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus' second coming when God's wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
• The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: earth, teach, wrath)

Bible References:

• Mark 04:17
• Mark 13:19
• Matthew 13:20-21
• Matthew 24:09
• Matthew 24:29
• Romans 02:09

Word Data:

• Strong's: H6869, G2347, G4423

(Go back to: James 1:27)
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don't trouble her” could also be translated as “don't bother her” or “don't criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:


(See back to: James 1:2)
true, truth

Definition:
The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not true! You will not die.”
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are the Son of God.”
- **39:10** “I have come to earth to tell the truth about God. Everyone who loves the truth listens to me.” Pilate said, “What is truth?”

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:18; 3:14; 5:19)
turn, turn away, turn back, return

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshipping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: false god, leprosy, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

Word Data:

(Go back to: James 1:17; 5:19; 5:20)
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes

Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: inherit, Israel, Jacob, priest, tribe)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:07
- Genesis 49:28
- Matthew 19:28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

(Go back to: James 1:1)
understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:
The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 3:13)
vain, vanity

Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

• In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as "vain" things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
• If something is done “in vain," it means that there the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain" might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or "with no purpose.”
• Depending on the context, the term “vain" could be translated as “empty,” “useless,” “hopeless,” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: false god, worthy)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
• 1 Samuel 25:21-22
• 2 Peter 02:18
• Isaiah 45:19
• Jeremiah 02:29-31
• Matthew 15:09

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1500, G2756, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

(Go back to: James 1:26; 4:5)
vine

Definition:
The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem." (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(Go back to: James 3:12)
water

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)
wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:05 She also wanted to be wise, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- 18:01 When Solomon asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world.
- 23:09 Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 1:5; 3:13; 3:15; 3:17)
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.” “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In *God's word* he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the *word of God*.
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what *God's word* says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in *God's word* must be fulfilled.” Then he opened their minds so they could understand *God's word*.
- **45:10** Philip also used other *scriptures* to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the *Word of God*.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his *word*, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: James 1:21; 1:22; 1:23; 2:8; 2:23; 4:5)
work, works, deeds

Definition:
The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:
- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

**world, worldly**

**Definition:**
The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)
wrath, fury

Definition:
Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's “wrath,” make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, “wrath” often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The “wrath of God” can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include “intense anger” or “righteous judgment” or “anger.”
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:

(Go back to: James 1:19; 1:20)
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:


(Go back to: James 4:3)
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of heaven, host of the heavens, Lord of hosts

Definition:

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God's authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: angel, authority, God, lord, Lord, Lord Yahweh Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Zechariah 13:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H3068, H6635, G2962, G4519

(Go back to: James 5:4)
year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

• A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
• In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
• In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

• 2 Kings 23:31
• Acts 19:8-10
• Daniel 08:01
• Exodus 12:02

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

( Go back to: James 4:13)
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs
Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman
John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wonda  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannahi Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

**unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelhoorn, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezi, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George “Drew” Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik “Henry” de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, M.Div., Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community